



О. В. Афанасьева
И. В. Михеева

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

5-й год обучения

9

КЛАСС



ДРОФА

УДК 373.167.1:611.111
ISBN 91.2Англ-922
А94

Афинычева, О. В.

А94 Английский язык. Серия «Новый курс английского языка для российских школ». 5-8 год обучения. 9 кл.: учеб. для общеобразоват. учреждений / О. В. Афинычева, Н. В. Михеева. — 3-е изд., стереотип. — М.: Дрофа, 2009. — 320 с.: ил.
ISBN 978-5-358-06646-5

Учебник, составленный в соответствии с требованиями к учебникам английского языка О. В. Афинычевой и Н. В. Михеевой, предназначен для учащихся общеобразовательных школ и является основным учебником учебно-методического комплекса для данного класса (далее по тексту).

УДК 373.167.1:611.111
ISBN 91.2Англ-922

Учебное издание

Афинычева Ольга Васильевна
Михеева Ирина Владимировна

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

СЕРИЯ «НОВЫЙ КУРС АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА
ДЛЯ РОССИЙСКИХ ШКОЛ»

5-8 год обучения. 9 класс

Учебник для общеобразовательных учреждений

Зав. редакцией Е. Ю. Шмелева. Ответственный редактор Е. В. Рубина
Художник О. П. Рыжова. Художественный редактор Л. П. Колесова
Технический редактор Н. Н. Герасимкина
Компьютерная верстка Г. А. Фетисова
Корректор Л. А. Малахова

Свидетельство о государственном аккредитовании № 17.00.00.010.Д.000000.00.00 от 21.06.2008.

Подписано к печати 29.04.09. Формат 78х90 1/16. Печать офсетная. Гарнитур «Школьная».

Печать офсетная. Усл. печ. л. 22,46. Тираж 25 000 экз. Заказ № 92799 и др.

ООО «Дрофа», 127018, Москва, Сущевский вал, 49.

Прозвонившие и заказавшие по телефону и оформившие заказ
присылаются в редакцию общего образования издательства «Дрофа»:
127018, Москва, в/ч 78. Тел.: (495) 795-05-01. E-mail: drofa@drofa.ru

По вопросам приобретения продукции издательства «Дрофа» обращаться по адресу:
127018, Москва, Сущевский вал, 49. Тел.: (495) 795-05-01, 795-05-51. Факс: (495) 795-05-02.

Торговый дом «Школьная» 109172, Москва, ул. Малая Конюшенная, д. 6, стр. 1А.
Тел.: (495) 911-75-24, 912-15-15, 912-45-70.

Сеть магазинов «Перекресток» 127018, Тел.: (495) 912-45-70.

Интернет-магазин: <http://www.drofa.ru>

ООО «Московский полиграфический комбинат»
124050, г. Москва, ул. Смоленская, 1.

ISBN 978-5-358-06646-5

© ООО «Дрофа», 2009



Do It Together

1. A. Listen to the song and say what it is about. (5) (T).
2. Read the lyrics and sing the song along.

Eagle

орёл

(Benny Andersson, Björn Ulvén)

They came flyin' from faraway
now I'm under their spell,
I love hearing the stories that they tell
they've seen places beyond my land
and they've found new horizons
they speak strangely but I understand
and I dream I'm an eagle
and I dream I can spread my wings.

— flying
отараранье

[br'jnd] за пределами

распространять

Flyin' high, high
I'm a bird in the sky
I'm an eagle that rides on the breeze
high, high
what a feeling to fly
over mountains and forests and seas
and to go anywhere that I please.

As all good friends we talk all night
and we fly wing to wing
I have questions and they know everything
there's no limit to what I feel
we climb higher and higher
am I dreamin' or is it all real
is it true I'm an eagle
is it true I can spread my wings.

Flyin' high, high
I'm a bird in the sky
I'm an eagle that rides on the breeze
high, high
what a feeling to fly
over mountains and forests and seas
and to go anywhere that I please.

2 Answer the questions.

- 1) What mass media¹ do you know?
- 2) Which is the most popular of them? Why?
- 3) What makes the Internet a fast developing kind of the mass media?
- 4) What newspapers and magazines do you read? What kind of information do you look for in them?
- 5) For what categories of people is the radio important?
- 6) The mass media give us information and entertain us. Which of the two is more important for you?
- 7) What do you usually watch on TV: the news, films, talk shows, sports programmes, musical programmes or any others?
- 8) Do you watch a lot of television? What does it give you?



3 NEF² Yesterday different programmes were shown on television. Listen to the tape, [20] (2), and decide which channel³ these people were likely to watch⁴.

¹ mass media [ˈmæsˈmi:diə] — средства массовой информации

² National Examination Format — формат национального экзамена (новый формат ЕГЭ)

³ a channel [ˈtʃænl] — канал, телевизионный канал

⁴ were likely to watch — скорее всего смотрели

Watching Television

Channel 1
Channel 2
Channel 3

a) Alice Radcliffe has recently visited China, Japan and Vietnam. She has fallen in love with the culture and traditions of these countries. Never misses a TV show devoted to them.



- b) Will Smith is fond of travelling. He has been to many European countries but has never visited any country of the Pacific or Indian Oceans. Wants to know more about flora and fauna of that region.
- c) Christina Bruce has been travelling over the world since her childhood. She is very much interested in the exotic traditions and customs of different peoples.

Name	Alice Radcliffe	Will Smith	Christina Bruce
Channel...			

- 4 Listen to the tape again, (2), and decide which of the statements are true and which of them are false.

Channel 1

- 1) New Zealand is the same size as the USA.
- 2) New Zealand is often called a natural park.
- 3) The kiwi bird is New Zealand's national symbol.
- 4) All birds in New Zealand are nicknamed¹ *kiwi*.
- 5) The kiwi bird will be protected by the government of the country.

Channel 2

- 1) Kwanzaa is celebrated in spring.
- 2) Kwanzaa is a theatre performance.
- 3) Kwanzaa is celebrated in Africa.
- 4) Kwanzaa is very popular among some African people living in the USA.
- 5) Kwanzaa means "favourite fruit" in Swahili.

Channel 3

- 1) The channel showed the programme about spring celebration in the East.
- 2) In spring Easter is celebrated in Europe.
- 3) In spring eastern churchmen walk barefoot² on fire during the Nagatoro Fire Festival.
- 4) Chocolate rabbits and eggs are symbols of the Nagatoro Fire Festival.
- 5) The Nagatoro Fire Festival is celebrated once in two years.

- 5 Say the same using the passive voice.

Example: They show a lot of thrillers on TV nowadays. A lot of thrillers are shown on TV nowadays.

- 1) John Logie Baird made the first television of old cars, bicycle parts, lenses³ and other things.
- 2) Baird demonstrated the first TV in 1925.

¹ a nickname ['nɪkneɪm] — прозвище; to be nicknamed — получать прозвище

² barefoot ['beɪfʊt] — босиком

³ a lens [lenz] — линза

- 3) They opened the first television service in Britain in 1936.
- 4) They first used colour television in the United States in 1956.
- 5) In the early days of television few people bought television sets because they were expensive.
- 6) They soon developed new technologies and built a lot of TV stations.
- 7) They formed the BBC¹ in Britain according to the monarch's order.
- 8) The BBC World Service shows programmes in forty different languages as well as in English.
- 9) They publish TV programmes in the *TV Times*, a popular weekly².
- 10) They show some programmes live but record most of them on film or videotape.
- 11) Nowadays you can find video shops everywhere in Britain.
- 12) Young people usually enjoy video clips and action films.
- 13) Some of the older people never miss old black-and-white films.
- 14) They always devote a lot of programmes to sport.
- 15) TV people introduce new programmes all the time.

- Complete these sentences using the verbs in brackets in passive.

- 1) In the 1970s new TV technologies (to develop).
- 2) A lot of TV programmes (to devote) to politics.
- 3) In the future new TV stations (to build) in Russia.
- 4) I am sure the best TV films (to show) next year.
- 5) Television (to use) for many purposes.
- 6) The BBC (to know) as the best non-commercial [ˌnɒnˈkɜːmɪʃəl] television system.
- 7) Television signals (to send) from a central source and (to receive) by home TV sets.
- 8) More and more people (to teach) with the help of television in the future.
- 9) Our lives (to dominate) by television in the future.
- 10) We hope that more good films (to watch) by young people.

¹ the BBC — The British Broadcasting Corporation — Британская теле-

и радиовещательная корпорация

² a weekly — еженедельник

Focus on Grammar

1. Ты уже знаешь, что сказуемое в предложениях в страдательном залоге образуется по формуле:
глагол to be в нужном времени + **V₃** (третья форма основного глагола).

The house is built, we can move in.

The house was built about ten years ago.

The house will be built very soon.

2. Для того чтобы сказать в страдательном залоге о том, что какое-то действие происходит в момент речи или в определенный момент в прошлом и продолжается в течение некоторого времени, в английском языке используют времена:

	Present progressive passive	Past progressive passive
	am being is being + V ₃ are being	was being were being + V ₃
+	1) A new school is being built in our street. 2) The letters are being answered now.	1) When I came back home, a new school was being built in our street. 2) At 5 o'clock the letters were still being answered.
-	1) The article is not being translated now. 2) The rooms are not being cleaned now.	1) When I rang John up, he said my article was not being translated. 2) At 6 the rooms were not being cleaned yet.
?	1) Is the fax being sent? 2) Where are these toys being sold?	1) Was the fax being sent when he called? 2) Were the toys being sold when the instruction came?

Express the same in Russian.

- 1) A new bridge is being built across the river.
- 2) When I entered the hotel, I noticed that all the cleaning ladies were busy. The rooms were being prepared for the coming guests.
- 3) John said he was not sure that these dictionaries were still being sold.
- 4) You can't get inside. The floors are being cleaned.
- 5) "Where is my favourite T-shirt?" — "Sorry, dear. It is being washed."
- 6) I know that this article is being translated now.
- 7) "Where is your luggage?" — "It is being weighed."
- 8) The story that was being told then surprised me more than I could imagine.
- 9) What music is being played? I can't recognize it.
- 10) When I entered the hall, the question of summer holidays was being discussed.

Look at the picture and say what is being done at the moment for the school party.



- 9 The man of the Future, Magnus by name, travelled across the century in his time machine visiting different places all over the world. Say what was happening there at the moment he arrived in these countries. Use the passive voice.



Example: When Magnus arrived in Ancient Greece a play was being performed in Athens.

Nº	Time	Place	Action
1	4 th century BC	Ancient Greece	to perform a play in Athens
2	3 rd century BC	China	to build the Great Wall of China
3	15 th century	England	to print the first book in the country
4	1666	England	to destroy London (by the Great Fire)
5	17 th century	North India	to construct the Taj Mahal [ˈtɑːdʒmɑːh] in the city of Agra
6	1703	St. Petersburg	to found the city

Окончание табл.

Nº	Time	Place	Action
7	1787	The USA	to write the Constitution of the United States
8	1812	Russia	to drive the French army out of the country
9	25 th December, 1950	Italy	to celebrate Christmas
10	12 th April, 1961	Russia	to send the first man into space ¹
11	20 th century	France	to show pictures by Marc Chagal in Paris
12	1989	Germany	to destroy the Berlin Wall

- 10 Read the texts (a–e) from English newspapers and match them with the titles (1–6). There is one extra title.

- 1) New Sports Star
- 2) A New Part for the Young Actor
- 3) The New Problems of the Black Continent
- 4) New Politicians
- 5) The New Climatic Problems of the World
- 6) Political History of the World

a) Jared Leto plays Hephaestion, Alexander the Great's closest friend and trusted soldier in this Oliver Stone film. The role was first offered to Brad Pitt, who had already appeared on our screens in *Troy*, another ancient history blockbuster. Leto stars with Colin Farrell as Alexander, Anthony Hopkins as Ptolemy and Angelina Jolie who plays the part of Olympias, Alexander's mother.

¹ space [speɪs] — космическое пространство, космос

- b) Kevina is 14. Her parents, aunts and uncles were killed AIDS, so she must look after her four younger brothers, 12 younger sisters and her blind¹ 84-year-old grandmother. They have no food, money, or home. By the year 2010 Africa will be 40 million parentless children — all because of AIDS.
- c) Most scientists agree that global warming is real. In the 21st century the average temperature went up about 0.6 degrees Celsius (about 1 degree Fahrenheit) around the world. They say higher temperatures are a result of an atmospheric growth of carbon dioxide.
- d) Lance Armstrong has always loved swimming and running. He seemed born to race bikes. Sometimes he rode so far from home at weekends, his mum and dad had to drive to look for him. He came good enough to ride with the US Olympic training team during his last years at school.
- e) The UK and US have had a special relationship for two centuries. Fighting together in World War II cemented their friendship. "What I have called the fraternal association of the English speaking peoples means a special relationship between the two countries," said Winston Churchill in 1946, just after the end of World War II.

Do It on Your Own

- 1 Choose the right form of the verb to make the sentences complete.

1) I can't give you John's article now. It (is translated / is being translated). 2) We couldn't get in because the rooms (were painted / were being painted). 3) When your granny was a little girl computer games (were not played / were not being played). 4) England milk and newspapers (are brought / are being brought) to the door of your cottage. 5) At the moment a new bridge (is built / is being built) across the river. 6) I can't give you any information about the project. It (is discussed / is being discussed) now. 7) Christmas and Easter (are celebrated / are being celebrated) in many European countries. 8) Such cakes (are made / are being made) easily. 9) What about the hall? — When I entered the house it (was decorated / was being decorated). 10) Everybody was busy. The rooms (were prepared / were being prepared) for the arriving guests.

¹ blind [blind] — cannot

Match the parts of the sentences in the two columns to get a complete phrase.

A

- 1) When I returned to my native city, I noticed that...
- 2) The room for the Christmas party...
- 3) Last Saturday I was invited to your party but...
- 4) I haven't posted the letters yet, ...
- 5) — Has the reporter come?
- Yes, ...
- 6) — Has Alec Fox finished the book yet? — No, ...

B

- a) Bill was not.
- b) the last chapter is still being translated.
- c) a new theatre was being built in its main square.
- d) Mr Jackson is being interviewed in the next room.
- e) is being decorated.
- f) they are being translated and will be sent tomorrow.

Open the brackets to complete the sentences. Use the passive voice.

- 1) The first television programmes (to show) at the beginning of the 20th century.
- 2) Nowadays new television technologies (to develop).
- 3) He says the new book (to discuss) in room 15 now.
- 4) Look! A new school (to build) in our street.
- 5) A lot of programmes on TV (to devote) to sport.
- 6) This fact (to know) to everybody.
- 7) Don't worry! Your papers (to prepare). They'll be ready soon.
- 8) These exercises (to do) yesterday.
- 9) When Nick entered the kitchen, dinner (to cook).
- 10) These books (to sell) everywhere now.

Section Two

Do It Together

- 1 Read the text "Television in the Classroom", then listen to it. **2** (3) Say what two pieces of information are missing from the text.

Television in the Classroom

I have been using television in the classroom for ten years already. I began doing it as a teacher of English. Television can bring real scenes of English life into the classroom, which is important because many learners of English seldom have a chance to speak or to

listen to people from England, America or other English-speaking countries. Television educational programmes help students understand a lot of facts in different subjects. And it is certainly much easier to learn the things which you have seen. From television programmes teachers can draw materials practically any topic or theme of interest to their learners.

- 2 Try and imagine a TV studio 30 minutes before the beginning of a talk show. Look at the phrases and say what is being done at the moment.



Example: invite the guests into the studio. — The guests are being invited into the studio.

- 1) turn on the lights
- 2) light¹ up the studio
- 3) check the cameras
- 4) bring in some extra chairs
- 5) put flowers on the tables
- 6) give the last-minute recommendations to the host²

¹ to light (lit, lit) — осветить

² a host (host) — a person who introduces other performers on a TV show (ведущий)

- 7) play a nice melody on the piano
- 8) read the scenario [s'na:rio] again
- 9) instruct the guests
- 10) switch on the microphones

Yesterday Andrew wanted to watch TV but couldn't find anything good enough.
He began to surf the channels¹. Say what he saw on them.



Example: Channel 1 — a sentimental melodrama — show. On Channel 1 a sentimental melodrama was being shown.

- Channel 2 — an old horror film — repeat
- Channel 3 — a talk show² — give
- Channel 4 — a modern opera — perform
- Channel 5 — a ballet performance — give
- Channel 6 — pop songs — sing
- Channel 7 — food — prepare
- Channel 8 — women's clothes — demonstrate
- Channel 9 — kids' bedtime stories — tell
- Channel 10 — classical music — play

- 4 A listen to the sentences, [sɪ] (4), read them and guess what the underlined¹ words mean.

- 1) You can get this information in electronic form. You can get this medicine in the form of a spray or as a tablet. The club was formed in 1972.
- 2) The television adaptation of the play was very successful.
- 3) A corporation is a large company or a business organization.

¹ to surf the channels — перемещаться по каналам

² a talk show — a chat show — беседа

³ underlined [ʌndə'laɪnd] — подчеркнутый

- 4) I never go to the central city library. I take books from our local village library.
 5) The *Harry Potter* films are feature films. *British Life* documentary, it tells about real people and events.
 6) The famous writer gave a series of talks at our school. I like watch that nature series on television.

B Listen to these words and sentences after them. (5). You know the words in column A, say what the words in column B mean.

A	B
advertisement	advertise, advertiser
humorous	humour
world, wide	worldwide

- 1) What goods are usually advertised on television?
 2) Jim is an advertiser, he advertises cosmetics [kɒz'metiks].
 3) Charlie Chaplin's films are full of humour, but it is often humour.
 4) French cheeses are famous worldwide, in other words they are famous all over the world because they have worldwide reputation.

C Read the underlined words again and learn to pronounce them right.

B Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (6), and repeat

A	
light [laɪt] — 1) освещать; 2) зажигать	broadcast ['brɒdkɑːst] — 1) трансляция; 2) в трансляции
enlighten [ɪn'laɪt] — просвещать	current ['kʌrənt] — текущий
serve [sɜːv] — служить, обслуживать	offer ['ɒfə] — предлагать
service ['sɜːvɪs] — 1) обслуживание; 2) служба	novel ['nɒvəl] — роман
major ['meɪdʒə] — 1) основной; 2) главный	right [raɪt] — право
equal ['iːkwəl] — равный	present ['preznt] — представлять
	stand for — употребляться вместо, обозначать

B
 light (lit, lit) (v): to light a candle, to light a lamp. When it gets dark, we'll light the lamp. If the electricity goes off, we will light candles. To be lit: The road was lit by the moon.

enlighten (v): to enlighten sb. I don't know anything about computers. Will you enlighten me? Enlightenment: the age of Enlightenment.

serve (v): to serve the country, to serve people, to serve dinner. My brother served in the Army. I helped serve dinner. Did the waiter serve you quickly?

service (n): (the) services of a doctor, mail (post) service. Jack was given a gold watch after 25 years of service. I'm sure the boy needs the services of a doctor.

servant (n): Mary is Miss Marple's servant.

major (adj): a major factor, a major problem, major changes. Our major problem is to get to the station at 5 sharp¹. A major part of the questions were devoted to history.

equal (adj): to be of equal size, to have equal importance, to be equal to (with) sb. He believed that men and women were born equal. They are equal partners.

equality (n): Young men would like to have equality with their elders.

broadcast (broadcast, broadcast) (v): to be broadcast on television (on the radio); to broadcast sth live. The President's speech was broadcast on Channel Five. The BBC will be broadcasting the match live from Paris.

current (adj): current events, current news, the current political situation. My current address is written here. Such words are not in current use any more.

offer (v): to offer sb a job, to offer a cup of coffee, to offer to help. I was thirsty, but nobody offered me a drink. I'm sure you should offer to help.

novel (n): a novel by a famous writer. How many novels has Ernest Hemingway written?

right (n): equal rights for sb, the right to education, the right to free speech. I think we should have equal rights for everyone. What gives you the right to talk to me like that?

present (v): to present a show, to present the news, to present a book. I presented my new friend to my parents. The class presented a wonderful performance of "Snow White".

stand for (v): The letters BBC stand for The British Broadcasting Corporation.

¹ at 5 sharp — точно (точно) в 5 часов

1 Complete the sentences with the new words (exercises 4, 5).

- 1) For many centuries people had to fight for their r... and f...
doms. 2) My father always watches e... news on television.
3) "The Karamazov Brothers" may be Dostoevsky's most fam...
n... 4) In Moscow TV programmes are b... from Ostankino.
5) Non-commercial television doesn't show any a... 6) Today
news is p... by my favourite newscaster¹. 7) The 18th century
Europe is known as the age of E... 8) "Can I be of any s...
you?" 9) D... on television can give viewers a lot of useful in-
formation. 10) Besides national newspapers there are l... newspa-
pers read by many people. 11) Why are you laughing? Personally
can't see the h... of the joke. 12) One of the basic democratic prin-
ciples is: all people are born e... 13) The best films are usu-
ally shown at film festivals and then w... 14) The windows in a
house were dark but then suddenly one of them l... up. 15) What
names of e... modern writers can you give?



Focus on Vocabulary

Serial ['sɪəriəl] — a written or broadcast story appearing in parts at in-
tervals (serial, microcephalous, gossamer)

Series ['sɪəri:z] — one of a group of programmes on television or radio which
are shown/broadcast regularly during some time (serial, series, past)

1 A. Read the text about the BBC and say which statements after the text
are true and which are false.

The BBC

The BBC is probably the best known non-commercial radio and
television system, formed by royal charter² in 1927 to "educate
and enlighten" the citizens. The letters BBC stand for the British
Broadcasting Corporation, a very large television and radio orga-
nization based in the UK. It includes five national radio stations,
more than 30 local³ radio stations, two national television sta-
tions, the International BBC World Service and BBC Worldwide
Television. The BBC is a public service. It is paid for by taxes⁴.

¹ a newscaster ['nju:skɑ:stə] — newsman

² a charter ['tʃɑ:tə] — a promise

³ local ['ləʊəl] — nearby

⁴ taxes ['tæks] — money



KARRIEREMESSE
DISCOVERY
LINZ



advertisers, and all the major political parties have equal rights
to give political broadcasts.

There are four radio channels. Radio 1 has mostly pop music;
Radio 2 has light music, comedy, sport. Radio 3 has classical and
modern music, talks on serious subjects, old and new plays.
Radio 4 presents current news reports, talks and discussions. The
BBC also has two television channels BBC 1 and BBC 2. BBC 2 of-
fers more serious programmes than BBC 1. It shows discussions,
adaptations of novels into plays and films, operas and concerts.
BBC 1 offers lighter plays and series, humour and sport, but
there are also some interesting documentaries. BBC documenta-
ries like "Animal Planet", "Discovery", or "Wildlife" are popular
in many countries of the world.

- 1) The BBC was not organized to make money.
- 2) The BBC includes both radio and television.
- 3) There are several local TV stations in the UK.
- 4) The BBC works for the UK only.
- 5) The BBC is not meant to give privileges to any political
party.
- 6) All the radio channels specialize in different things.
- 7) To listen to serious music people turn on Radio 1.
- 8) You can hear talks and discussions on just one radio channel.
- 9) BBC 1 presents less serious programmes than BBC 2.
- 10) BBC documentaries are shown worldwide.

B. Listen to the same text,  (7), then read it aloud.

8 Read the text about the BBC again and answer the questions.

- 1) What do the letters BBC stand for?
- 2) When and why was the BBC formed?
- 3) What units does the BBC consist of?
- 4) How do you understand the phrase "The BBC is a public voice"?
- 5) In theory can the BBC help one of the political parties to elections?
- 6) Why do you think different radio and TV channels specialize in different programmes?
- 7) Which of the two TV channels — BBC 1 or BBC 2 — a lot of classics may choose?
- 8) Have you ever watched any of the BBC documentaries? What impression did they make on you?



Focus on Vocabulary

В любом языке есть слова, противоположные по значению. Как ты, наверное, помнишь, они называются антонимами. Хороший пример антонимов — английские прилагательные **major** и **minor**. Об их антонимичности можно судить по тому, как эти слова описываются в словаре. Ср.

Major — greater than others in size, number, importance, or seriousness.
Minor — lesser or smaller in size, number, or importance than others.

A major problem — a minor problem

Антонимы часто образуются в языке при помощи различных суффиксов-приставок. Ср.: appear — disappear, real — unreal, regular — irregular, possible — impossible, commercial — noncommercial.

9 Match the antonyms in the columns.

A

- 1) alive
- 2) ancient
- 3) easy
- 4) expensive
- 5) imaginary
- 6) last
- 7) long
- 8) loud
- 9) safe

- a) short
- b) hard
- c) real
- d) dangerous
- e) dead
- f) cheap
- g) first
- h) quiet
- i) new

B

- 1) to arrive
- 2) to destroy
- 3) to lose
- 4) to love
- 5) to live
- 6) to open
- 7) to sell
- 8) to give
- 9) to remember

- a) to close
- b) to take
- c) to forge
- d) to build
- e) to die
- f) to leave
- g) to buy
- h) to find
- i) to hate

¹ elections [ɪ'lekʃnz] — выборы

Here are some TV programmes. Which of them would you choose? What's your first choice? Explain it.

- political discussion
- opera
- concert of classical music
- comedy play
- sports programme
- documentary
- news
- talk show
- film based on a classical novel
- serious play
- modern film
- quiz show¹
- series based on a modern bestseller
- regional news
- film (a lyrical comedy)
- pop-music concert
- soap opera²
- new cartoon³
- crime film

8 You and your friend want to watch one of the programmes. Discuss with him/her which one is the best programme to watch.

- 1) political discussion
opera
concert of classical music
comedy play
- 2) sports programme
documentary
news
talk show
- 3) film based on a classical novel
serious play
modern film
quiz show
19th century play based on a melodrama

¹ quiz — a game in which participants have to answer questions
² soap opera — a television or radio programme about the continuing daily life of characters in it
³ a cartoon [kɑ:'tu:n] — мультфильм, комикс

Do It on Your Own

10 Express the same in English using your active vocabulary.

A. 1) Основные проблемы; 2) радиотрансляция; 3) замечать; 4) равная права; 5) прекрасное обслуживание; 6) предложить новую книгу; 7) предложить помощь; 8) текущие дела; 9) известный роман; 10) коммрастическая передача; 11) адить новую корпорацию; 12) местные новости; 13) переводить песни; 14) новые документальные фильмы; 15) рекламировать одежду.

B. 1) Ты любишь смотреть документальные фильмы? 2) Где купил этот телевизор? — В нашем местном магазине. 3) Рассказы полны юмора. 4) Я ничего не знаю о телевидении (television broadcasting). Ты не можешь просветить меня? 5) У нас всех равные права. 6) Моему я предложить вам чай? 7) Ты читал роман Льва Толстого «Война и мир»? («War and Peace»)? 8) Реклама часто передается по телевизору. 9) Можешь помочь подать чай? 10) Я не уверен, что он знает свою правду. 11) Что обозначают буквы МР? — Они обозначают «парламент». 12) Я знаю, что сейчас создается новая всемирная корпорация. 13) Я еще не зажгла лампу, хотя уже темно. 14) Дома мои родители часто обсуждают текущие новости.

12 Form antonyms of these words and write what they mean in Russian.

Dis-: to like, to trust, honest, comfort, interested, harmless to place.

Non-: fiction, payment, smoker, European, metal, political.

Un-: to do, afraid, changeable, clean, comfortable, cooked, happy, important, interesting, loved, lucky, married, pleasant, to pack.

Im-: moral, perfect.

Ir-: responsible, regular.

14 Use the right form of the verb *to be* to make the sentences complete.

1) This novel (be) read at the moment. 2) Yesterday the ticket (be) not bought. The box office was closed. 3) Such television programmes (be) really shown at prime time¹. 4) I'm sure these pro-

¹ prime time — the most popular time for watching television, which is in the middle of the evening

grams (be) discussed at our next meeting. 5) When I entered the room, the wall (be) painted and I couldn't find any place to put my things. 6) In winter street lamps (be) often lit at 4 p.m. 7) This question can easily (be) answered. 8) Where (be) such games played — indoors or outdoors? 9) All your friends (be) invited to the party tomorrow afternoon. 10) The new documentary is not ready yet, it (be) still made.

Section Three

Do It Together

Listen to the tape, [25] (8), and match the extracts from the TV programmes (1–4) with their names (a–e). There is one extra name.

- a) Wildlife: the Kind Giants
b) Fauna: Animals of Australia
c) Everything You Want to Know about the Horse
d) Our Pets, What Do We Know about Them?
e) Secrets of the Underwater World

Extracts	1	2	3	4	extra
Programme name					

Read the text and use the verbs in the brackets in the right passive form to make it complete. Then check your answers. [26]



Calling Home

It is Wednesday afternoon. Mr Robin Warren is away on business. He is calling his servant Luke to know what is being done for the party he is going to have when he returns home.

R. W.: Good morning, Luke! How is it going? Can you enlighten me?

L.: Everything is all right, sir.

R. W.: What about the invitation cards?

L.: They (write)¹, sir.

R. W.: And my partners Mr and Mrs Wilkins? They (inform) the party?

L.: I'm not sure they are, sir. Yesterday when I returned home Wilkins (to call)² by your secretary, but unfortunately at that moment your partner was away. But don't you worry, sir. Wilkins (inform)³ either today or tomorrow.

R. W.: And what about the big hall, Luke?

L.: Everything is all right, sir. The hall (decorate)⁴ at the moment and the curtains (wash)⁵. I think they (hang)⁶ on the windows the evening already.

R. W.: Have you prepared the decorations?

L.: We think that can (do)⁷ a little later. The flowers (buy)⁸ Friday, sir. Everything (check)⁹, sir. I'm sure everything (do) sir, when you come.

R. W.: Very good, Luke. Bye.

L.: Good bye, sir. Hope to see you soon.



Focus on Vocabulary

Spelling

1. Знакомые тебе слова colour, humour, favourite известны США написанием. Сколько иначе: color, humor, favorite. Это различие -our (BrE) = -or (AmE) сохраняется и в других словах, например behaviour / behavior (BrE/AmE) и вложение).

2. Между британским и американским вариантами английского языка существует и иные различия в правописании. Ср.

British English	American English
-tre	-ter
centre	center
line	liner
theatre	theater
metre	meter
-s-	-t-
traveller	traveler
travelled	traveled
travelling	traveling

What do you think the underlined letters stand for?

- 1) Lewis Carol, h, in 1832, an English writer, wrote such a well-known children's story as "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland".
- 2) Hollywood, CA, is home to American film industry.
- 3) The first place they visited in the US was Washington DC.
- 4) I collect CDs with the music of my favourite groups.
- 5) The BBC is known worldwide.
- 6) Rome was founded in 753 BC.
- 7) Time's come for you to think of your future.
- 8) Mr Andrews lives in Church St not far from here.
- 9) "Fall" (AmE) is the same as "autumn" (BrE).
- 10) I have a penfriend in Newcastle, UK.



Focus on Grammar

Когда собеседнику нужно сообщить, что произошло какое-то событие, не упоминая при этом, когда именно, и используя страдательный залог, он может выразить сказуемое формой **present perfect passive**, которая образуется по формуле:

have been | + V₁
has been

+

A new school has been built in our town.
All the letters have already been sent.

-

His new book has not been discussed yet.
Their projects have not been finished.

?

Has the answer been received?
Have the invitation cards been written?
Where have they been sent?

4 Read the sentences and say in which of them present perfect passive is used. Translate them into Russian.

1) An interesting comedy play has been shown on channel 4. Have you seen it?

- 2) I have just listened to the local news.
- 3) The BBC has broadcast the series of documentaries about animal world this month.
- 4) A wonderful performance of "The Seagull" has been just presented by the Moscow Art Theatre.
- 5) She has been offered a cup of strong hot coffee and a nice cake.
- 6) We have e-mailed to your current address.
- 7) Christmas candles have been lit up. It's time to sit down at table.

5 Look at the pictures and say what has been done.

Example: The new island has been discovered.



1) discover



2) wash



3) cook



4) buy



5) light



6) write



7) paint



8) draw



9) read



10) build

6 Say why it is so. Use present perfect passive.

- 1) It's light and cosy in the room. Why? (all the lamps/light)
- 2) People are discussing the new TV programme. Why? (the programme/show/just)
- 3) I'm packing my bags. Why? (I/offered/a seaside holiday)
- 4) Susan can't buy any food on her way home. Why? (the shops/close/already)
- 5) The composer looks very happy. Why? (his new symphony/successfully/present to the public)
- 6) We don't want to watch this film. Why? (it/broadcast/many times)

- 7) Jane's car looks nice and clean. Why? (it/carefully/wash)
 8) The children are running home. Why? (ten/just/serve)
 9) There will be no more football matches this season. Why?
 the games/play/already)
 10) Mother is smiling. Why? (she/give/a wonderful birth/
 present)

Focus on Vocabulary

Phrasal verb 'to turn'

- 1) to turn into — превратиться(ся)



This is how the ugly Duckling turned into a beautiful swan.

- 2) to turn on — включать. Could you, please, turn the computer on?

- 3) to turn off — выключать.



May I turn off the television?

- 4) to turn over — перевернуть(ся)



Will you turn over, please?

- 5) to turn up — включать, повысить. Could we turn up the sound?

- 6) to turn down — включать, понижать.



Can you turn the music down a bit?

¹ Phrasal ('frazl) verb — фразовый глагол. Фразовые глаголы используются в разговорной речи, которые состоят из глагола и дополнения. Например: to look for — искать, to look up — смотреть, to look over — перевернуть, to look down — понижать, to look up — включать, to look down — выключать.

Complete the sentences and use the words up, down, into, on, off, over where necessary.

- 1) My little brother turns ... the TV as soon as he gets in. 2) I've told you the music is too loud and asked you to turn it ... so turn it ... 3) Only in fairy tales mice can be turned ... horses. 4) Can you turn the radio ... a bit? I'm not sure everybody is interested in the programme. 5) You may turn ... your exam papers and read the questions. 6) Turn ... your answering machine [mɔʃɪn] when you leave the house. 7) It's 10 o'clock. You should go to bed, dear. Turn ... the tape recorder. 8) You should teach me to turn ... and ... the CD player. 9) When I turned the picture ..., I saw the name of the artist on the back. 10) If you can't bear the music well, turn it ...

Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (10), and repeat

A.

asleep [ə'sli:p] — спящий
 addicted [ə'dɪktɪd] — пристрастившийся, зависимый
 cartoon [kɑː'tu:n] — мультфильм, комический фильм
 cater [keɪtə] — удовлетворять запросы
 fail [feɪl] — не справиться, не преуспеть
 depress [dɪ'pres] — приводить в уныние

serious ['sɪəriəs] — серьезный
 spread [sprɛd] — распространяться(ся)
 kid [kɪd] — 1) ребенок (pl. kids); 2) шутка
 quiz [kwɪz] — 1) викторина; 2) проверочная работа
 imagine [ɪ'mæʒɪn] — воображать, представлять себе
 be on — быть на экране, идти
 break down — сломаться

B.

asleep (adj): to be asleep, to be fast asleep, to be half asleep, to fall asleep. Are you asleep yet? The children were fast asleep in their rooms. I walked to the telephone, still half asleep. She was so tired, she fell asleep sitting in her chair.
 addicted (adj): to be addicted to sth. He says he is addicted to coffee and cigarettes. Unfortunately more and more people become addicted to stupid TV programmes.
 cartoon (n): an animated cartoon, humorous cartoons, cartoons with animal characters. I have always wanted to watch Walt Disney cartoons.

cater (v): to cater for sth, to be well catered for, to cater for children. The school caters for all pupils. In this hotel all are well catered for.

fail (v): to fail to do sth, to fail an exam. Most people who lose weight fail. They have failed (to pass) their exams in Russian literature.

depress (v): to depress sb. Mr Morton had lost his job and this depressed him. It depresses me to see all these crime films on screen.

serious (adj): a serious problem, a serious mistake, a serious crime, to be serious about sth. Are you serious about leaving job? — Dead serious!

spread (spread, spread) (v): to spread quickly, to spread over country. Rain will spread from the west and reach all areas by evening.

kid (n): a group of kids, college kids. Have you got kids of your own? We took the kids to the zoo at the weekend.

quiz (n): to take part in a quiz, an ecological quiz, tests and quizzes, a quiz on history. "Who wants to be a millionaire?" is a popular TV quiz.

imagine (v): to imagine sth; to imagine sb doing sth. Try to imagine that you are lying on a beach. Imagine her sitting in that room alone. Just imagine!

be on (v): What's on at the "Forum" cinema? Mike was surfing the channels as he didn't know what was on.

break down (v): On our way to the country the car broke down and we had to walk to the station.

Read the text and make it complete using the new words.



I have a friend, Denis by name, who is quite a ... to television. He spends hours in front of the box, watches everything and ...

* Dead serious. — Absolutely serious.

... thing that's on. Most of all he likes watching comedy series and ... But he also never f ... to see feature films and animated ... even those which are made for very young k ... If there ... nothing else on, he watches concerts of s ... music and educational programmes. In other words, Denis can't i ... his life without television and gets d ... when something stops him from watching it. Not long ago Denis' television b ... down. My friend said he couldn't fall a ... without it. He didn't sleep for three or four nights, felt so bad that the news of his illness a ... in his office. Luckily he soon got his TV back and his life came back to normal too. Personally, I think that television shouldn't take up so much of our time.

Focus on Vocabulary

Synonyms

Слова **child** и **kid** — синонимы. Они имеют одинаковый смысл и обозначают ребенка любого пола. Однако, если слово **child** можно использовать в любой ситуации, существительное **kid** — слово разговорного стиля (особенно в британском варианте английского языка). Оно часто используется в диалогах, обычных житейских описаниях и никогда — в официальных документах, диссертациях. Подобные синонимы называются синонимами стилистическими (*stylistic synonyms*).

4. Read the text "What We Watch" and find in it the English equivalents for the following.

- 1) keep the television turned on
- 2) entertain guests
- 3) something (usually a book, a film or a TV programme) which is thought to be bad
- 4) people get so dependent on television that they can't stop watching it
- 5) get very unhappy because of the unpleasant situation that you feel you can't change
- 6) TV programmes are made to satisfy all people
- 7) they are sure to watch their favourite programme (2 variants)
- 8) serious film or programme

What We Watch



Can you imagine your life without television? Most of Russian families watch it but some families have the television turned most of the time, even when they have meals or receive visits. They can watch anything that is on including trash¹. They asleep to television and turn the TV set on first thing in the morning. These people get so addicted to television that they feel depressed when their TV sets break down. Unfortunately, this kind of abnormality² is spreading fast. Yet, in most families television is turned on for two or three hours a day. TV programmes nowadays cater for any age and any taste. Men traditionally watch sports programmes and never fail to see important football matches. If they want to watch a film, they choose a comedy, thriller or a crime film. Women may watch serials, comic set, pop-music concerts, lyrical [lɪŋkəl] comedies and melodramas [melə'drɑ:mə]. Both men and women watch the news, talk shows and quizzes. Those who have more developed tastes listen to classical music, watch plays and straight or serious films. Some people prefer science programmes, political broadcasts and documentaries.

Young people never miss a good musical programme or a popular comic series. Children watch cartoons, children's educational programmes and kids' bedtime stories.

R Listen to the same text, [20] (11), then read it aloud.

¹ trash [træʃ] — отходы, мусор

² abnormality [ə'bɒnəl'məti] — аномалия

A Look at the text "What We Watch" again and write out the names of TV programmes. Which of them do you often (sometimes, never) watch?

R Say what place television takes in your life. Mention the following:

- how much time you spend in front of the television every day
- if you watch TV for information or entertainment or both
- what programmes you prefer
- what programmes you hate
- if you can imagine your life without television

Do It on Your Own

Complete the sentences using prepositions and adverbs where necessary.

- 1) Wendy is a true chocoholic. She is addicted ... sweets and chocolate which is not healthy.
- 2) I like cartoons ... Mickey Mouse as a character.
- 3) Are you serious ... going there?
- 4) I would like to know what is ... television tonight.
- 5) Mark began cycling rather well but his bike broke ... and he had to stop his training.
- 6) Yesterday we had a quiz ... Russian literature. I think I failed ... it.
- 7) This school caters ... kids who can't hear well.
- 8) Can you imagine ... the sandy beaches of the Mediterranean?
- 9) It was rather cold. Thick fog was spreading ... the field and forest.
- 10) I think my washing machine has broken ...
- 11) If my memory¹ serves me right, there's a nice comedy ... tonight.

Write the same in a different way. Use the passive voice.

Example: We spend a lot of time on watching television. A lot of time is spent on watching television.

- 1) The managers are discussing their plans for the coming year in room 30.
- 2) They have just given me some new information about the exams.
- 3) We shouldn't discuss serious problems in a hurry.
- 4) How many sets have the tennis players done yet?
- 5) These kids have already seen hundreds of animated cartoons.
- 6) What are they broadcasting on Channel 4 at the moment?
- 7) They must cater for children's interests.
- 8) We have made a decision and we won't change it.
- 9) When I entered the sitting-room they were watching some quiz or a talk show.
- 10) We have already done the

¹ memory [mə'mɒri] — память

lessons. 11) The weather in the morning was wonderful, a wind was driving white clouds in the blue sky. 12) The kids just completed the difficult task.

Express the same in English.

A. 1) Креша статьи; 2) пристраститься к мультфильмам; 3) удовлетворять любые интересы; 4) провалить экзамен; 5) серьезная книга; 6) победить в истории; 7) воображал; 8) по второму разу; 9) часто ломиться; 10) счастливые отношения; 11) распространяться по стране.

B. 1) Я могу представить нас танцующими. 2) Эта новость быстро распространилась по школе. 3) Главные фильмы всегда гонят на меня уныние. 4) Я попытался сделать работу сам, не справился. 5) Мы очень устали и вскоре крепко уснули. 6) Джейн пристрастилась к шоколаду и конфетам и полнотеет. 7) Телевидение пытается удовлетворить запросы всех людей. 8) Что идет в московских кинотеатрах? 9) Телевизоры стали очень популярны среди людей разных возрастов. 10) Да, ребята, бегите сюда скорее! 11) Мама много дяди часто дома. 12) Ребенок кажется слишком серьезным для своего возраста.

C. 1) Сделай музыку потише, Миша заснул. 2) Переверни страницу и ты увидишь удивительные вещи. 3) Когда температура нулю, лед начинает превращаться в воду. 4) Выключи телевизор, фильм закончился. 5) Не выключай компьютер, пожалуйста. Он сломался. 6) Ага, сделай телевизор погромче, пожалуйста. Бабушка плохо слышит.

Section Four

Do It Together

1 Listen to the tape, (12). You'll hear a TV interview with an American film star. Match the questions below (a-e) with the star's answer (1-5).

- a) What's the best piece of advice¹ anyone has ever given you?
b) Are your partners rich?

¹ advice [əd'vaɪs] — совет(s)

- c) How did you become famous?
d) Where do you and your family come from?
e) Who is the most important person in your life?

Read the text and use the verbs in brackets in the right passive forms to make it complete, then check your answers, (13).



It is Saturday morning. Mr Robin Warren has just arrived home. He is talking to his servant Luke. He wants to know if everything is ready for the party.

R. W.: Good morning, Luke! Do you think everything (do¹) yet?
L.: I am sure, sir. I know that the hall (decorate²), the flowers (buy³) and (put⁴) in the vases. The tables (cover⁵) with white table-cloths¹ and extra chairs (bring⁶). Would you like to walk about the house and see it for yourself?

R. W.: Yes, Luke, I think I would. What about the windows and the curtains?

L.: The windows (clean⁷) and the curtains (wash⁸) and (hang⁹). The hall looks very impressive, indeed, especially when all the lamps (light¹⁰).

R. W.: Yes, it is not bad-looking, I agree. But, Luke, invitation cards! They (send¹¹) to all the guests?

¹ * table-cloth ['teɪbəlklɒθ] — скатерть

L.: Quite so, sir. By the way, I know you like to have live music, so some musicians (invite¹²). I'm glad to inform you, sir, their instruments just (unpack¹³) and they (put¹⁴) in the big living-room at the moment.

R. W.: Good, Luke, and the dishes? They all (cook¹⁵)?

L.: Certainly, sir. Your favourite cake (finish¹⁶) at the moment and the tables (lay¹⁷) a bit later.

R. W.: Right, I forget the fireplace, Luke. The fire (burn¹⁸)?

L.: Oh no, sir, I'll just go and see to it¹⁹.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Use the new words.

- 1) At about what time did you fall asleep yesterday? When you get up in the morning? Did you get enough sleep?
- 2) What are the three things that depress you most of all? What are the three things that please you most?
- 3) Is there any activity you regularly fail to do? And what activity are you specially good at?
- 4) What food or drink are you addicted to if any?
- 5) Full-length cartoons have become rather popular. Which ones have you seen? What do you think of them?
- 6) Can you imagine yourself at the age of 40? What will you be like?
- 7) What is the fastest and the surest way of spreading infection?
- 8) Do you watch TV quizzes? Which one(s) do you like?
- 9) Children of what ages does your school cater for?
- 10) What is the most serious political programme on TV at the moment?
- 11) Is there anything interesting on television tonight? What would you advise to watch?

4 Listen to the tape. [20] (14), then read these words and sentences. You know the words in column A, say what the words in column B mean.

A	B	A	B
addicted	addict ['ædɪkt]	spread (v)	spread (n)
depress	depressed	fail	failure
depress	depression	imagine	imagination
serious	seriously		

¹ to lay (laid, laid) the table — накрыть на стол

² to see to sth — позаботиться, увидеть за собой

1) An **addict** is a person who has a strong need for something or who is a very enthusiastic fan. My cousin is a cartoon **addict**.

2) You look **depressed**. If you are depressed, you are sad and feel that you can't enjoy anything.

3) John worried himself into a state of **depression**.

4) I'm sorry but your mother is **seriously** ill.

5) A **spread** is a cloth covering a bed. Yesterday we had sandwiches made with chicken **spread**.

6) Our holiday was a **failure** because we were all ill.

7) You didn't really see a ghost — it was only your **imagination**. It took great **imagination** to write such a clever story.

Focus on Grammar

На уроке вы узнали, что когда речь идет о двух действиях в прошлом, первое из упомянутых действий произошло раньше второго. То есть высказывая какое-то действие, вы передаете глаголом **a past perfect**.

Nick said he had been to the Bolshoi Theatre before.

Эти же глаголы действуют, если глагол используется в отрицательном варианте. В этом случае используется форма **past perfect passive**, которая образуется по формуле:

had been + V,



He said a new school had been built in his street.
Alice remembered the film had already been shown on TV.



Jack asked if such questions hadn't been answered yet.
I was sorry the work hadn't been done yet.



Had the problem been discussed by two o'clock?
Had the answer been received by then?

5 Read the sentences and say in which of them past perfect passive is used. Translate these sentences into Russian.

- 1) He said his car had broken down on his way home.
- 2) Just imagine! The room has been painted pink.

- 3) A new version of "Bamby" cartoon had been shot, as we found out from the newspaper.
 4) Yesterday Nick was taken to hospital. Poor kid!
 5) I was surprised that my favourite quiz had been shown on before the news. It had never happened before.
 6) The news of the coming storm has spread in no time.

6 Look at the pictures and report what they said in the nine o'clock news yesterday.

Example: to send an expedition. They said an expedition had been to the North Pole.



1) to break a new record



2) to stage a new play



3) to build a new hospital



4) to interview a well-known politician



5) to give a concert



6) to launch a new spaceship into orbit



7) to make a speech to the government



8) to discover a new planet



9) to play the most important match of the season



10) to bring a collection of pictures to the country

4 Choose the right form of the verb to complete the sentences.

- 1) Some new documentaries (have/had) been recently shown on Channel Four. 2) Dick remembered that humorous short stories (have/had) been read on the radio by some popular actors. 3) When we entered the room, the television (has/had) been turned on and my parents were watching the news. 4) Thanks to television Walt Disney's cartoons (have/had) been spread all over the world. 5) When I came to Trutsk last year, I visited the new

library that (has/had) been built there. 6) The *Harry Potter* films (have/had) been broadcast in all European countries. 7) The teacher told us that these problems (have/had) never been discussed. 8) Very few new species of animals (have/had) been recently discovered. 9) Unfortunately our car (has/had) not been washed and we had to drive to town in the dirty car. 10) All the invitation cards (have/had) been written.

1 Nowadays television plays an important role in most people's lives. It's true it is for you? In small groups speak on the following items. Choose one person in the group to sum up¹ the results.

Say

- 1) how much time you usually spend in front of the TV
- 2) what channels and programmes you like to watch and why
- 3) if you ever watch sports programmes on TV and what programmes you prefer
- 4) if you are fond of serials and which of them you think to be best and why
- 5) what feature films you like to watch on TV and on the video
- 6) how often you watch the news on television
- 7) which quizzes and talk shows are your favourite and why
- 8) what you think of Russian television, its strong and weak points²

Summing up

In this group

- 1) ... pupils watch TV more than 2 hours a day,
... pupils watch TV less than 2 hours a day,
... pupils seldom watch TV at all.
- 2) The favourite channels and programmes are
The most popular reasons are
- 3) ... pupils watch sport on TV.
Their preferred programmes are
- 4) The most popular serials are
They are thought to be
... pupils never watch serials.
- 5) The most often watched films are
- 6) ... pupils watch the news regularly,
... pupils watch the news from time to time,
... pupils never watch the news.

¹ to sum up [sʌm ʌp] — synopsise, summarise

² strong and weak points — advantages & disadvantages

- 7) The best loved serials are ...
- They are believed to be ...
- 8) ... pupils think that Russian television is very good.
... pupils believe that it could be better.
... pupils say that it's very bad.
- The most often mentioned strong points are ...
- The most often mentioned weak points are ...

Comment on the picture and say how television influences family life.



When I want my children to hear me, I have to stand in front of the television.

1 Listen to the dialogue.  (15), then read it. Act it out.



The Morrisons are spending a Sunday evening at home.

Mrs Morrison: Tea is ready, Jim, please, turn on the telly.
Come on everybody, sit down at table.

Mr Morrison: Well, here we are. But wait a moment, Jim.
Don't turn the set on yet before we know what we're going to see.
I'm just looking at the programmes.

Jim: Dad, there is a good cowboy film on.

Susie: Oh, no. We are not going to sit through an evening watching cowboys, my dear brother.

Mr Morrison: Sue, stop talking like that, and Jim, you've not asked mum what programme she would like to see.

Mrs Morrison: It's true, Jim, isn't it? I'm all for a comedy.

Jim: While you're talking about it we are missing the film.

Mr Morrison: If you ask me, I would like to watch the football match that is on.

Susie: Oh, dad, you know I hate football. Let's see what is on and decide what we all would like to see.

Mrs Morrison: I agree with Sue. So, what's on, dear?

Mr Morrison: There's a crime film starting in ten minutes and an opera on BBC 2.

Jim: An opera... It sounds a bit too much for a Sunday evening.

Susie: But it is a pop opera and quite modern, Jim.

Mrs Morrison: What's on BBC 1?

Mr Morrison: "The Cry in the Night" with Benjamin Wilson in the main role.

Susie: Put it on, Jim, if mum agrees.

Mrs Morrison: I have always liked Benjamin Wilson as an actor.

- 11 A. Your friend is fond of watching sports programmes on TV. And you would like to watch a documentary about the future of our planet. Convince him to watch the programme with you.

B. Make up your own dialogues about two friends choosing a programme to watch. Use some of the underlined words and phrases from ex. 9 in your dialogues.

Do It on Your Own

- 12 Report what these people said to each other.

Example: Mr Barnes: How long have you been in London?

Justin: Oh, I arrived only yesterday.

Mr Barnes asked how long Justin had been in London and Justin replied that he had arrived only the day before.

¹ to introduce [br'vins] — yel'vuzers

1) Mrs Bishop: The weather is so dry that my poor roses are dying.

Margaret: It hasn't rained for three weeks. Can I help you to water the garden?

2) James: I have just watched "Titanic".

Ernie: Really? "Titanic" is a very old film, it was made years ago.

3) Alice: Is mother still asleep?

Jim: She has already got up. She is in the kitchen, making breakfast.

4) Barbara Kelly: I met James on my way to work this morning.

Mrs Kelly: James? Is he back? He called me from Greece only two days ago.

5) Teacher: You are late, Martin. What's the matter?

Martin: I'm very sorry, sir. I missed my bus. It won't happen again.

- 13 What did the newspapers write yesterday?

Example: The talks were opened in the Kremlin. The newspapers wrote that the talks had been opened in the Kremlin.

1) The talks were completed successfully.

2) The leaders of the countries were given a dinner.

3) The guests were taken to the Bolshoi Theatre.

4) "Aida", a well-known opera, was shown to them.

5) The next day a press conference was organized.

6) The politicians were asked a lot of questions.

7) The press conference was shown on television.

- 14 Write ten questions to find out what your classmates watched yesterday and what impression the programmes made on them.

Section Five

Do It Together

- 1 You will hear five young people speaking about television. **MP**
Match the speakers (1-5) with what they say (statements a-f). There is one extra statement. Fill in the table at the end of the exercise.



1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

- a) It is not to my liking.
b) I think it has a great educational value.
c) It helps me to travel about.
d) It gives you the latest news and keeps you informed.
e) I can't spend plenty of time on it.
f) I can't live without it.

Speaker	1	2	3	4	5	extra
Statement						

- 2 Complete the sentences choosing the right form of the verb *to be* (*is, was, have been, had been*).

1) I am absolutely sure that a lot of recent programmes ... devoted to the global problems of our time. 2) The teacher explained to us that the BBC ... formed in Britain according to the monarch's order. 3) Lately a lot of old feature films ... shown on "Culture" channel. 4) A new remake of my favourite cartoon ... just shown on TV. 5) They said the books ... published several years before. 6) This TV programme ... introduced lately. I haven't seen it yet. 7) Such video clips ... never ... enjoyed by old people. 8) This concert ... just ... recorded. Now my parents can listen to it. 9) Alice said the books ... not ... bought yet. We can't find a shop where they are sold. 10) They told us the new school ... built in our street.

- 3 Make these sentences passive.

1) They are showing a very funny soap opera on TV now. 2) Johnson has written a new novel. 3) I enlightened my friend

about our future trip. 4) We never read such difficult books in English. 5) When I returned to my home town, they were building a new theatre in the central square. 6) When Jenny entered the party hall, they offered her a glass of wine. 7) They are discussing a new project. 8) The wind was driving the clouds across the sky. 9) They want you on the phone. 10) They told me they had bought a new car. 11) They never remembered such things. 12) Alice said she had already done her room. 13) My secretary has already answered all the letters. 14) Pupils easily forget math rules.

- 4 Listen to the sentences, **MP** (17), then read what the underlined words mean.

1) He always speaks in an angry and unpleasant way to people and criticizes everybody. 2) Stephen was faced with the moral dilemma: should he return the money he had found or not. It is immoral to kill animals. 3) It is a standard form that the company sends to its clients. He is a man of high moral standards. 4) Don't tell anybody. It is a secret ['si:krt]. These are secret documents. Very few people have seen them. 5) People know that CIA¹ agents can be found practically in every country of the world. They are often called secret agents. 6) He can be sent to prison for his criminal behaviour. Prison is a place for criminals. 7) Mike reads a lot. Naturally he has got only good and excellent marks in literature. 8) The sum of 12 and 4 is 16. What sum of money did you spend? 9) Melani and I are very close friends. I know all her intimate secrets.

- 5 A Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, **MP** (18), and repeat

A.	
threat [θreɪt] — угроза	shame [ʃeɪm] — стыд, позор
society [sə'saɪəti] — общество	spy [spaɪ] — шпион
violence [vaɪələns] — насилие	humiliate [hju'mɪliet] — унижать
cruelty ['kru:lti] — жестокость	spoil [spɔɪl] — портить
rude [ru:d] — грубый	interrupt [ɪn'tɜ:p't] — прерывать
forget [fə'get] — забыть	
instead [ɪn'stɪd] — вместо	

¹ The CIA [saɪ'əns] — the Central Intelligence Agency is a US government organization (УПВ — Федеративное правительство)

B

threat (n): a threat of war, a threat of rain, a threat to freedom and democracy. They face the threat of terrorism every day.
society (n): a threat to society, a middle-class society, a modern society. Bad drivers are a danger to society. My granny enjoys society of young people.

violence (n): to use violence against sb, the violence of the storm. The wind blew with great violence. Many people say too much violence is shown on the screen.

cruelty (n): cruelty on television. Melissa was shocked by the cruelty of his words.

rude (adj): rude words, rude behaviour, a rude joke. His mum told him not to use rude words. It was very rude of her to be without telling us.

forget (forgot, forgotten) (v): to forget things, to forget war. Alec forgot his friend's mobile phone number. She said she'd forgotten to ring me up.

instead (of) (adv): I don't like coffee. Could I please have tea, instead? You should be doing your room instead of watching television.

shame (n): to be full of shame, without shame, to feel (no) shame sth, to bring shame on sb. John felt no shame at his behaviour, their shame, they were wrong. What a shame you couldn't come.

spy (spied, spied) (v): to spy for sb; to spy on sb. Mr Nelson has been spying for the Italians for many years. Don't spy on me. Why should you do it?

humiliate (v): to humiliate children, to be (feel) humiliated. Jack was humiliated when he found out that his girl-friend could do faster than he could.

spoil (v): to spoil the view, to spoil children. I really hope it won't rain — that would spoil everything. Stop saying "yes" all the time, Frank, you're spoiling the child.

interrupt (v): to interrupt sb/sth. Richard interrupted his sister while she was speaking. Listen to your dad and don't interrupt him.

5 With what other words can you combine² them?

to forget: the address, ...

to spoil: the project, ...

¹ What a shame... — Какое сожаление! (AmE)

² to combine [A+B] — соединять

to interrupt: the show, ...
 to present: the book, ...
 rude: answer, ...
 instead of: milk, ...

Fill in prepositions where necessary to complete the sentences.

- 1) The sum ... money he gave me was not enough to buy the CD I wanted. 2) It is very rude ... you to speak like that. 3) You will spoil ... your children if you let them do anything they want. 4) Fascist ['fæʃɪst] organizations are a threat ... our society and democracy. 5) I feel that somebody has been spying ... me for some time. Who can it be? 6) Cruelty and violence must be taken away ... the screen. 7) I can't explain Alan's cruelty ... his dog. We must speak ... him. 8) Let's go ... the cinema instead ... going to the circus. 9) The news about his rude behaviour brought shame ... his family. 10) I was full of shame ... your rude words. 11) Mr Robinson felt no shame ... his behaviour. 12) This man spoiled ... the British during the war.

6 Look at the pictures and say what these people decided to do instead of other things.



Paul



Ann



Cathy



Robert



Alice



Tom and Maggie



Bob



Mrs Smith

Example: Instead of staying at home Paul decided to go to the park.

8 Read the text and say which of the following ideas can not be in it.

- 1) People think that television has to answer for a lot of crime in the society.
- 2) People think that grown-up programmes should not be shown when kids sit in front of televisions.
- 3) People think that programmes showing crimes should take too much time.
- 4) People think that not all TV programmes are made in bad taste.
- 5) People think that advertisements on TV are not a very good idea.



Modern Television

Lately television has been criticized for being a threat to the society's moral standards as it shows too much sex and violence. There are too many war films and, even worse, too many stories about secret agents, criminals and the police, who shoot people if they were rabbits. Naturally a lot of people don't want television to show sex, violence and cruelty. They say such programmes, if they have to be shown at all, should never be run in prime time¹ or any other time when young children can see them. People also criticize bad-taste programmes where rude jokes are made or where people are made to fight over a sum of money, getting all shame, or programmes crying on people at the most

¹ prime time = the most popular time for watching television

minute moments of their lives. Such programmes give examples of humiliation and bad taste.

Some TV programmes are politically engaged¹ and present the views and ideas of one group of people instead of presenting different views.

Above all most of TV viewers dislike TV commercials² that can spoil the impression of a good programme by interrupting it.

Comment on some ideas of the text. Give your point of view. Give examples.

- 1) Modern television teaches people immorality.
- 2) There is too much violence and cruelty on television.
- 3) Young children often watch programmes that teach them wrong things.
- 4) There are a lot of bad-taste programmes on television.
- 5) Programmes in which people are made to fight over a sum of money humiliate them.
- 6) Programmes where people are spied on are immoral.
- 7) Television should not be politically engaged.
- 8) Commercials don't let people enjoy the programmes they watch.



Focus on Vocabulary

В английском языке слово **police** (полицейский) имеет только множественное число и всегда употребляется с определенным артиклем. Поэтому мы говорим:

The police are coming soon.

The police are here, they have just arrived.



9 Some of these sentences have mistakes. Correct them.

- 1) The police have helped us to get home in their car.
- 2) Police have caught the criminal.
- 3) The police was asked for help.

¹ to be politically engaged = to support a political party or movement

² a commercial = a TV or radio advertisement (реклама)

- 4) Would you like to join the police?
- 5) Call police!
- 6) The police is looking for the criminals.
- 7) Sometimes the police are late, when they arrive, the criminals already gone.
- 8) Somebody called the police and it came in no time.

Do It on Your Own

12 Write the same in passive.

- 1) People have been criticizing television for being a threat to society recently.
- 2) Television shows too much violence and cruelty.
- 3) On the TV screen the police, criminals and secret agents kill people as if they were rabbits.
- 4) They should never run such programmes at prime time.
- 5) In bad-taste programmes they make rude jokes.
- 6) They humiliate people when they make them fight over a lot of money.
- 7) In political TV programmes they should present different points of view.
- 8) Commercials often spoil the impression of TV programmes.

13 Express the same in English.

A. 1) Критиковать свое общество; 2) ужасное унижение; 3) принять беседу; 4) забыть о своих проблемах; 5) грубый локон; 6) угроза всем нам; 7) жестокость по отношению к нам; 8) аморальное поведение; 9) сумма денег; 10) тайное общество.

B. 1) Многим людям нравится фильм о Джеймсе Бонде, в котором агент ее величества (Her Majesty). 2) Ваши грубые слова унижают меня. 3) Мы никогда не забываем сказать друг другу «Доброе утро». 4) Ты испортил мою работу, очевидно, и я возмущен на тебя. 5) К своему стыду, я не мог сказать ни слова. 6) Жестокость и насилие — угроза нашему обществу. 7) Не жалуйтесь, не прерывай меня. Я боюсь забыть, что хотел сказать. 8) Шпионить на людях аморально, не делай этого.

Section Six: Consolidation Class

Do It Together

Listen to the tape. (19). You will hear five parents speaking about television and their children. Match the statements below (a-f) with what the parents say (1-5). There is one extra statement.



- a) My child has no time limit for watching television.
- b) My child prefers real events and activities to those shown on the screen.
- c) My child watches the programmes I choose.
- d) My child chose his career watching television.
- e) My child learns so many things watching television.
- f) My child's choice of TV programmes is under control.

Parents	1	2	3	4	5	extra
Statements						

14 A Listen to these words and sentences after them. (20), then read them. You know the words in column A. Say what the words in column B mean.

A	B
threat	threaten, threatening
violence	violent
cruelty	cruel
forget	unforgettable
clumsy	be ashamed
spy (to)	spy (a)
humiliation	humiliating
rude	rudeness
interrupt	interruption

1) Jane threatened to leave the family and go abroad. 2) As you ashamed of yourself for telling a lie? 3) Last June we visited Paris. That was an unforgettable trip. 4) There was a violent storm at sea. 5) His words were very humiliating and I was pleasantly surprised. 6) We were ashamed of Ted's rudeness. 7) There were several interruptions in his speech. 8) David gave his enemy a violent blow. 9) Jason likes reading spy novels, spy stories. 10) How could you be so cruel to your own parents? 11) Alice has been receiving threatening phone calls for a time.

8. Make up some rules of good behaviour in society. Use the words in the two boxes.

Don't...
Try to...
Don't forget to...
Never...
It's shame to...
Always...
Remember...

violent language
humiliate others
control your feelings
think of
be rude
interrupt people
greet people
cruel things
threaten

Example: Don't forget to greet people when you meet them.

9. Read the text given below and make it complete with the words from the words on the right or their stems.¹

In some families children watch too much television — four or five hours every day. Not all the programmes they watch are good for young (1).

For example, a programme may have cruel scenes [sizu] where people attack each other (2), use rude language and behave (3). Specialists say that children (4) often copy what they see. That is why those who watch (5) on television have a tendency to be more (6).

view

violent, about
fortunate
fight
aggressive

¹ a stem — основа слова

At the same time (7) and (8) are part of our life. Maybe it is better for children to know about them?

One thing is clear: programmes that show (9) must be discussed with parents or watched together with them. Such (10) can let parents explain to their children how to behave in (11) situations and the young ones will feel more (12).

cruel, violent

aggressive

discuss
threat

protect

Read the text and complete it using the right form of the words in brackets.



Yesterday Channel Two showed a nice programme about pets and names we give them.

I liked one of the stories told by a kindly elderly man. Here is his story.

"Last summer we found a ginger¹ cat in our garden. At (one) (1), we thought he belonged to a neighbour but soon understood that he didn't. He was thin and hungry. We put cat food out for him and he (eat) (2) everything but did not let us get close to him.

(slow) (3) we won his trust² and he moved into a sort of "cat house" which we made for (he) (4) in the garden. Days passed and the cat became much (friendly) (5) than before. Finally he began to follow us everywhere. He probably felt that he (lose) (6) one "family" and wasn't going to lose another!

We tried (differ) (7) "cat" names on him and found he answered to Ginger. So that name became his. (Late) (8) we found he also answered to Dinner, but we could (hard) (9) call him that! He is now a house cat, a much-loved pet, even if he has become rather bossy."

¹ ginger [dʒɪŋɡə] — рыжий
² trust [trʌst] — доверие

Read a page from the TV guide and complete it with the word combinations (a–e) from the box. Match the texts with the pictures.

- a) makes a great impression
- b) Jules Verne's classic novel
- c) find the legendary Lost Ark
- d) stars Sharon Stone
- e) stronger than love or friendship



Catwoman

(Sky Movies 2, 8.00 p. m.)

Oscar-winning actress Halle Berry brings the unforgettable comic-book character to life. Fantastic adventure that also features Benjamin Bratt as the cop on Catwoman's trail. (2004) ***

Around the World in 80 Days

(Sky Movies 2, 9.40 p. m.)

Comedy based on ^(b) about an eccentric Victorian Englishman who wanted to go round the globe in 80 days. Steve Coogan and Jackie Chan head the list of actors, with great support from Jim Broadbent and Ewen Bremner. (2004) ***

The Terminator

(Five, 10.00 p. m.)

The first of the Terminator films made rather long ago, but still ^(a). Arnold Schwarzenegger is the robot assassin¹ sent back in time to kill the mother of the boy who was to become the planet's only hope. Directed by James Cameron, with Linda Hamilton and Michael Biehn. (1994) ****

ET: The Extra-Terrestrial

(ITV1, 5.05 p. m.)

Classic family entertainment. A boy finds an alien² and they develop a relation that is ^(e). Directed by Steven Spielberg and starring Henry Thomas and Drew Barrymore. (1982) *****

Raiders of the Lost Ark

(Sky Movies 1, 10.00 p. m.)

First of the films of the blockbusting Indiana Jones trilogy, and the best. Harrison Ford fights against time to ^(c). Steven Spielberg's Oscar-winning film also stars Karen Allen and Denholm Elliott. (1981) *****

It is Friday night, you want to put your feet up and watch television. Below you can read what British television shows. What will you choose and why?

SECT: Film. Primary Colours (1998). Political satire, with John Travolta and Emma Thompson

- 1. an assassin [ə'seɪn] — убийца
- 2. an alien [ə'liːn] — космонавт (из другой планеты)

Do It on Your Own

- 12 Complete the dialogue with the phrases from *Social English* section.

A.: Well, well, well! So they lost, didn't they?
 B.: Who? What are you talking about?
 A.: Your favourite football team, the *Riders*. The score was (three to one). Didn't you watch television yesterday?
 B.: No, I didn't and... I don't support the *Riders*.
 A.: But you said only yesterday that you were their fan.
 B.: I have always supported the *Rangers*.
 A.: Have you? Oh, but anyway it's a pity you missed yesterday's match. I thought you watched all the important games.
 B.: I never watch football on television. If I want to see a match I go to the stadium.
 A.: Oh, I know. You're just like Peter. The two of you go to stadium together, don't you?
 B.: ...we don't. I go there with my friend Steve. He supports *Rangers* too.
 A.: Steve? He doesn't like football. Steve prefers basketball.
 B.: ...he doesn't. Everybody knows that he never misses a football match.

- 13 Describe one of yesterday's TV programmes. Mention the following:

- when the programme began and how long lasted
- what kind of programme it was (a serial, a film, a show, etc.)
- what it was about
- if you enjoyed it
- if you are going to watch it again or recommend your friend to watch it

Section Seven. Creative Writing

Do It Together

Read the following about how to write paragraphs.



Have you ever tried to build something? To make what you want you often need a lot of different things. Writing is similar to building. Usually you cannot tell a whole idea with just one sentence. You need several sentences to explain a complete idea. A group of several sentences that tells about one idea is called a paragraph.

You write paragraphs in almost all of your school subjects. In this section, you will learn about paragraphs. You will learn a method, or process, to help you write paragraphs. Once you understand this process of writing, you can use it to help you write anything.

As a paragraph is made up of several sentences about one idea, it is important to decide what the main idea of a paragraph is. It is also important to remember that the first sentence of the paragraph is indented¹. This signals the beginning of the paragraph.

The main idea of a paragraph is usually told in one sentence. It is called the topic sentence or the key sentence. It is often the first sentence of the paragraph. The rest² of the sentences in the paragraph tell more about the main idea. Sentences that are not about the main idea should not be included into the paragraph.

¹ is indented — all sentences reported report
² the rest — sentences

2 Read this paragraph and decide what it is about.

The Russian flag has three wide stripes on it — white, blue and red. The colours of the flag are symbolic. *White* is faithful and sincere, *blue* is honest and loyal and *red* is brave. The Russian flag first appeared in 1668. It was the symbol of Russia for more than 300 years and then reappeared as the modern flag of the country.



2 Read this paragraph. What is the main idea?

One of the most popular games in the USA is football. About 100 million people watch football each weekend during the fall and winter. Baseball is also very popular.

4 What is the main idea of the paragraph below? Copy out the topic sentence that tells the main idea.

Though my grandfather is seventy-one, he rides his bike everywhere. He goes swimming every morning in the summer and does a lot of skating in the winter. As he lives in the country, he works much in the yard and in the garden. Sometimes he cleans windows and floors in the house. In the evening he takes long walks with his dog. My grandfather seems younger than his age. He is one of the most active people I know.



5 There is no topic sentence in the following paragraph. Read the paragraph and choose the best topic sentence from the list below (a–c).

- a) Time is important for English people.
- b) The English spend a lot of time in their homes.
- c) An Englishman's house is his castle.

On any weekday evening, seven out of eight grown up people usually stay at home. They watch television or videos, read books, listen to music. Some of them may play musical instruments and follow their hobbies. Half the families who live in the country have a garden in which they plant flowers or grow vegetables.

4 Read the paragraph and say



- a) how many sentences there are in it; b) what its main idea is and what the topic sentence is.

Our first visit to Tenby was in the 1980s, during a rather poor October. The house we took faced the sea. The wind blowing from the shore was so strong that we thought it would take the roof off! Mornings were rather cold but in the afternoons we enjoyed bright sunshine. While we were staying at Tenby we visited a few places of interest like the Welsh folk museum and Llandaff cathedral. People in Wales are fond of singing and dancing. They have music festivals and competitions well-known in Britain. I will always remember Tenby as a wonderful resort where one can always relax and have a very good time.

- 2** Copy out the sentence(s) which does (do) not belong to the paragraph.

4 Read the topic sentence. Write a paragraph based on this idea (not more than 10 sentences). Below are some questions that can help you.

Topic Sentence: I will never forget those summer holidays.

Questions: When did they begin? How long did they last? Where did you spend them? With whom did you spend them? What did you do? Did you enjoy them? Why?

- 2** Read out the paragraph which you have written. Compare it with your friends.

Do It on Your Own

- 1 A. Read the paragraph below. Find the topic sentence.

Birds have excellent eyesight¹. Their eyesight is better than that of most other animals. Birds can see small objects on the ground from high in the air. They can also see in colour, as people do. Dogs cannot see as well as people. Most birds have eyes on the sides of their head. This means that they can see almost all around without turning their heads.

B. Decide if all the sentences belong to it. Copy out the sentences which does (do) not belong to the paragraph.

- 2 Read the topic sentence. Write a paragraph based on its main idea. The hints² below can help you.

Topic Sentence: Watching television is one of my usual pastimes. **Write**

- if you often watch television
- where and when you usually do it
- how much time you usually spend before the screen
- what your favourite TV programme is
- why you like this programme
- if you spend too much time watching television
- if television does too much harm to you

¹ eyesight ['aɪsɪt] — зрение

² a hint [hɪnt] — подсказка



Unit 2

The Printed Page: Books, Magazines, Newspapers

Section One

Do It Together

- 1 A. Listen to the song "Gimme! Gimme! Gimme! (A Man After Midnight)". [21], and say what it is about.

B. Read the lyrics and sing the song along.

Gimme! Gimme! Gimme! (A Man After Midnight)

(Benny Andersson, Björn Ulvæus)

Half past twelve
and I'm watchin' the late show
in my flat all alone
how I hate to spend
the evening on my own
autumn winds
blowin' outside the window
so I look around the room
and it makes me so
depressed to see the gloom
there's not a soul out there
no one to hear my prayer
Gimme! Gimme! Gimme!
A man after midnight
won't somebody help me

сумерки, тьма
душа
молитва
= give me

chase the shadows away
Gimme! Gimme! Gimme!
A man after midnight
take me through the darkness
to the break of the day

Movie stars
find the end of the rainbow
with a fortune to win
it's so different from
the world I'm living in
tired of TV
I open the window
and I gaze into the night
but there's nothing there to see
no one in sight
there's not a soul out there
no one to hear my prayer

Gimme! Gimme! Gimme!
A man after midnight
won't somebody help me
chase the shadows away
Gimme! Gimme! Gimme!
A man after midnight
take me through the darkness
to the break of the day

2 Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you like reading books?
- 2) Who are your favourite authors?
- 3) How big is your home library?
- 4) Do you borrow books from your friends or from the library?
- 5) How does reading books help you in your life?
- 6) Do you or your family read newspapers and/or magazines? Which ones?
- 7) What information can people get from newspapers and magazines?
- 8) Do people read more or less than before? Why?

spornats' tenn ipre

pacocet

60ac7c7d0

873a2mbr00k

8 8006 apwina

Match the names of the children's videos (1-6) with the paragraphs (a-e). There is one extra name.



- 1) 101 Dalmatians [daɪ'mætɪnz]
- 2) Stories from the Black Tradition
- 3) Charlie from the Chocolate Factory
- 4) Iggy's House
- 5) The Railway Children
- 6) The Princess and the Pea

a) The film is based on a very popular book by E. Nesbit. When Father has to go away for a time, the three children and their mother leave their London home and go to live in a small house in the country. The children find a strange place for their games where they make friends with Perks, the Porter and with the Station Master himself.

b) One of Disney's best films. It has action, excitement and warm kindness of any other Disney animated film. At the end of their adventures the young dogs find their home and the evil Cruella de Vil is won over.

c) Every new generation of children enjoys the famous story of a girl who turned out² to be of a royal family. Younger ones love to have the story read to them. Older children can read it themselves or watch the new video based on it.

d) Presents five stories based on the tradition of African storytelling. The cassette includes such old favourites as "Why Mosquitoes Buzz in People's Ears" and "Mufaro's Beautiful Daughters."

e) When Charles Bucket won the fifth Golden Ticket which let him look at the wonders of Mr Wonka's industry, he stepped into

¹ generation [dʒenə'reɪʃən] — поколение
² be born out — родиться

the world of surprises and so will the viewers of this impressive film starring Johnny Depp as Mr Wonka.

- 4 Listen to the sentences, (22), and guess what the underlined word means.

- 1) The night was warm and quiet. The quietness was very pleasant after the busy working day.
- 2) The girl was so tired that she couldn't concentrate on the work she was writing.
- 3) I lost concentration for a moment and missed what the teacher was saying.

- 5 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (23), and repeat.

A.

cheerful ['tʃɪəfʊl] — веселый, радостный
feel [fi:l] — чувствовать
peaceful ['pi:sfʊl] — мирный
whisper ['wɪzə] — 1) шепот; 2) шептать
lonely ['ləʊnli] — одинокий
alone [ə'ləʊn] — один
strange ['streɪndʒ] — 1) странный; 2) незнакомый
treasure ['treʒə] — сокровище

wise [waɪz] — мудрый
wisdom ['wɪzəm] — мудрость
enter ['entə] — входить
fascinating ['fæsnətɪŋ] — пленительный, захватывающий
enjoy oneself — приятно проводить время
feel at home — чувствовать себя как дома

B.

cheerful (adj): a cheerful person, a cheerful smile. Stephen was such a cheerful child! The children were singing a cheerful song which I hadn't heard before.

peaceful (adj): to look peaceful, to be peaceful, a peaceful atmosphere. We spent a peaceful evening by the river.

whisper (n) to say in a whisper. She said it in a whisper I couldn't hear. (v) The children were whispering in the corner.

feel (felt, felt) (v): to feel bad, to feel well, to feel pleased. She always feels happy when she comes home.

lonely (adj): a lonely old woman, a lonely pine tree. James has been very lonely since his wife died.

alone (adj), (adv): to be alone, to leave sb alone. Alice lives alone. You alone can do it. Time alone will show who is right. Leave me alone, I'm tired and I don't want to discuss it.

strange (adj): a strange place. What is that strange noise? The name is strange to me, I have never heard it before.

treasure (n): a real treasure, art treasures. "Treasure Island" is an adventure story by Robert Louis Stevenson. A **treasure-house**: This place is a real treasure-house of books.

wise (adj): a wise professor, a wise behaviour, wise advice. I don't think it's wise to teach Alan at home.

wisdom (n): His answer shows his wisdom.

enter (v): to enter the hall, to enter the house. Please enter the cottage by the back door. If you enter the university, you become a student.

enjoy oneself (v): We all enjoyed ourselves at the movies. Ann enjoyed herself at the party.

feel at home: Whenever I visit your family, they always make me feel at home.

- 6 Match the words and word combinations in the two columns.

A

- 1) to enter
- 2) depressed
- 3) wise
- 4) treasure
- 5) alone
- 6) to whisper
- 7) to feel at home

B

- a) to think hard about sth
- b) a collection of gold, silver and money
- c) to speak very quietly
- d) without any people
- e) to come in
- f) to feel comfortable
- g) knowing many things, knowing what is right and good
- h) feeling sad and unhappy

- 7 A Say what you *never/sometimes/often* fail to do. You can get some ideas from the pictures.

Example: I *never* fail to wash my hands before a meal.





8. Say what programmes you never or seldom fail to watch on TV.

Example: I seldom fail to watch a football match.

9. Say what one can see in these places.



Example: As soon as you enter my room, you can see a plant.

Focus on Vocabulary

Synonyms

Alone	Lonely
Alone = with nobody or nothing else. (Being alone is not good and not bad. It doesn't mean that one is unhappy.) Alone is never used before a noun. Example: That evening Mike was alone in the house. The tree stands alone on the hill.	Lonely = unhappy because you are alone or have no friends and think that nobody loves you. Example: All her family are away and she feels very lonely. Talk to me, I'm feeling a little lonely.

10. Choose *alone* or *lonely* to complete the sentences.

- 1) All her children are away on holiday and she is living all
- 2) He has been very ... since his wife died.
- 3) Only you ... can help me in this situation.
- 4) Jack is very ill and cannot live
- 5) Linda doesn't like to remember her ... childhood¹.
- 6) We were ... all day on the beach: the bad weather kept all the others at home.
- 7) Can you finish the job ...?
- 8) The boy felt ... in the new school.
- 9) Every evening, rain or shine, he took his ... walk along the country road.
- 10) Next time when you feel ..., play this song and you'll feel better.

11. A lot of periodicals² have a section "Readers' Letters", to which readers can write and share³ their ideas. Here is one of such letters. Read to the letter and say which of the following ideas can not be found in the letter.

- 1) The reader loves and has always loved libraries.
- 2) The reader was first taken to the library by his/her parents.
- 3) The reader used libraries for his/her studies.
- 4) The atmosphere ['atmosfo] of the library never fails to make the reader feel more cheerful.

¹ childhood ['tʃɪldrʊd] — детство

² a periodical [ˌpɪərɪˈɒdɪkəl] — журнал, периодическое издание

³ to share [ʃeɪ] — делиться

- 5) The reader thinks that nowadays children don't go to the library so often as they did before.
6) The reader believes that a library is the right place for children to go.

Reader's Letter to a Periodical

I am no longer young but I still remember happy Saturday mornings I spent in the library when I was a child. In libraries I was cheerful and peaceful. The library was my special world in which I loved everything — the smell of the books, the whispering voices of the readers and the librarians, the sound of turning pages. As I grew up, libraries became more and more work-places for me at school and university. But there were other times when I went to the library just because I felt lonely or depressed. When I was alone in strange towns, I never failed to find the local library and enjoyed myself spending one or two hours there.

For me libraries have always been places of quietness and concentration, treasure-houses of wisdom, culture and information, a kingdom of the printed word.

Our children need to learn from babyhood to feel at home in libraries. At the same time they should look at them as very special places where they can enter a new fascinating world.

2 Listen to the text, **24**, then learn to read it aloud.

11 A. Remember how the Reader describes the following in his letter.

- 1) The Reader describes ... Saturday mornings spent in the library.
- 2) In libraries the reader felt ... and ...
- 3) The library was the Reader's ... world.
- 4) The Reader remembers the ... voices of the readers and librarians and the sound of ... pages.
- 5) Later the Reader sometimes went to the library because he was ... and depressed.
- 6) For the Reader, libraries have always been places of ... and treasure-houses of ... and information, the kingdom of the word.
- 7) Children should look at libraries as very ... places where they can enter a new ... world.

2 Compare your impressions with the Reader's.



- 1) The Reader first went to the library at a very young age. Did you?
- 2) The Reader liked everything in the library to which he/she went as a child. And you?
- 3) The Reader used libraries for work. And you?
- 4) The Reader went to libraries when he/she felt lonely or depressed. And you?
- 5) For the Reader libraries are a special fascinating world. And for you?
- 6) The Reader thinks that young children should go regularly to the library and feel at home there. What do you think? What can be done to make children feel at home in the library?

Do It on Your Own

- 1** Express the same in English using your active vocabulary.

- A. 1) говорить шепотом [2 варианта]; 2) никогда не проваливать экзамены; 3) мудрость; 4) чувствовать себя как дома; 5) войти в комнату [2 варианта]; 6) захватывающая (волнующая) мысль; 7) одиозная старушка; 8) незнакомый голос; 9) старинная книга; 10) радостный ребенок.

1. to whisper [шопот] — шепотом

В. 1) Сэм и Аланс всегда приятно проводят время по вечерам. 2) Я часто хожу в кинотеатр около своего дома. 3) Дядя живет в свой старый дом. Там было жарко и тихо. Он был доволен. 4) Не чувствую себя одиозным. Это был его племянник. 5) Шерлок Холмс (Sherlock Holmes) увидел странное изображение в окне. 6) Вы хорошо провели вчера время в театре. 7) Мальчик не смог перевести все предложения. 8) Остаток меня в покое. Я не хочу говорить об этом. 9) Мой сын всегда был веселым, радостным ребенком. 10) Где твои сокровища? Показали его жене. 11) Это был мудрый план. Мы решили сделать ему.

Section Two

Do It Together

1 Listen to the tape, (25), and fill in the missing information in statements (1–5). Use a number, a word or a word combination.

- 1) Conan Doyle began writing his stories in ...
- 2) Conan Doyle's first profession was the profession of a ...
- 3) The museum's address is 221b ...
- 4) The museum was opened in ...
- 5) The museum feels like the detective's real ...

2 Read the text and name the library(ies) about which the following are true.

- 1) This library is situated in a capital.
- 2) The text doesn't say when the library was opened or started.
- 3) This library was started by a monarch as early as the 14th century.
- 4) This library is bigger than the other three.
- 5) We know who was the architect of a certain part of this library.
- 6) This library moved to a new building not so long ago.
- 7) We know who cannot use this library.
- 8) We know some names of people who were this library's readers.
- 9) This library began as an information centre for politicians.
- 10) The text doesn't say if this library has any books written outside the country.

The Greatest Libraries of the World



a) The US Library of Congress is the largest in the world. It has about 90 million items — books, manuscripts ['manuskripts], maps, photographs, pieces of music and microfilm ['mikrofilm]. The library has about 350 miles of bookshelves in three gigantic buildings in Capitol Hill, Washington D. C.

The collection was started in 1800 to help Congressmen in their work. When in 1814 the books were destroyed in a fire, the Congress bought Thomas Jefferson's personal library of about 6,500 books — the beginning of a new collection. Now the US Library of Congress is open to the general public.

b) Bibliothèque Nationale (National Library) is the most important library in France and one of the oldest in the world. It is now located in Paris. Its beginning was the first royal library started by Charles V (1364–1380) who collected 1,200 manuscripts in the Louvre. Since 1537 the library has received a copy of every French publication. In 1692 the library was opened to the public and renamed the Bibliothèque Nationale in 1793. The library's collection nowadays includes about 9 million books and 180 thou-

and 180 thousand manuscripts published in France and in other countries of the world.

c) The Russian State Library in Moscow is one of the largest in the world. It has more than 40 million items in 247 languages: books, newspapers, maps, music and others. The library is not only a place to read. It is also a learning centre which organizes lectures, discussions and presentations. The library was opened in the 18th century on the basis of Count Rumyantsev's private collection and since that time it has been used by scientists, scholars, teachers, students, in fact anybody who is over 18 years old, to use the library's reading rooms. About 4 thousand people come to the library every day.

d) The British Library is the national library of the UK. It got a copy of every book published in the country and many foreign publications as well. The library has a large new building in London which was finished in 1996. Before that the library was part of the British Museum. Nowadays everyone who comes to the museum can visit the famous Reading Room designed as Round Reading Room by the Italian Anthony Panizzi who had to leave his country for England and was Keeper of Printed Books from 1826 to 1856 and Librarian of the Museum. Some of the greatest men and the most famous people of their times have worked in it: writers, dramatists, politicians such as Dickens, Bernard Shaw, Garibaldi, Karl Marx, Vladimir Lenin.

- 3 You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A	B	A	B
strange	stranger	feel	feeling
enter	entrance	enjoy	enjoyment
fascinating	fascinate	lonely	loneliness

- 1) I've met her once before, so she's not a complete stranger to me. 2) The children were fascinated by the monkeys in the zoo.

¹ a pantheon ['pæniən] — пантеон. 1) у древних греков и римлян так называли храм, посвящённый всем олимпийским богам. 2) место погребения выдающихся деятелей. Знаменитый Римский пантеон имеет особую форму, которая послужила образцом при строительстве чинальских храмов.

- 3) The church has a very fine entrance. 4) I have a strange feeling that I've seen you somewhere. Have we met before? 5) He doesn't get any enjoyment from dancing. 6) The feeling of loneliness was new to the boy.

Focus on Word-building

1. Имена существительные в английском языке раньше часто образовывались при помощи суффиксов -hood и -dom. В современном английском языке эти суффиксы можно встретить в таких словах, как:

- childhood — детство (child + hood)
babyhood — младенчество (baby + hood)
manhood — зрелость (у мужчин) (man + hood); мужскость
womanhood — зрелость (у женщин) (woman + hood); женскость

2. Абстрактные имена существительные часто образуются от прилагательных при помощи суффикса -ness.

- polite + ness = politeness (вежливость)
white + ness = whiteness (белота)
kind + ness = kindness (добота)

- 4 All these words are formed with the help of -ness. What do they mean?

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1) darkness | 7) loneliness |
| 2) softness | 8) playfulness |
| 3) brightness | 9) madness |
| 4) cleverness | 10) cleanliness |
| 5) laziness | 11) englishness |
| 6) openness | 12) sadness |

Focus on Grammar

English participles

В английском языке так же, как и в русском, существуют причастия. Первое причастие (first or present participle (participle)) образуется от глагола при помощи суффикса -ing.

- play + ing = playing (играющий)
walk + ing = walking (прогуливающийся)

¹ Существительное русского добровольческого движения.

Второе причастие¹ (second or past participle) образуется при помощи суффикса -ed (для тех названий, заканчиваясь гласными):

play + ed = played (игравший)

ask + ed = asked (спросивший)

У тех названий, заканчиваясь согласными, форму второго причастия (формы глагола) следует записать:

speak — сказанный said — сказанный

show — показанный bought — купленный

8 Express the same in Russian.

- 1) The stranger's smiling face was kind and I smiled back.
- 2) The news brought by my friend was exciting; we would go to Kostroma for a day.
- 3) Football played all over the world is one of the best games.
- 4) At 9 o'clock the finished work was lying on my boss's desk.
- 5) Tom's parents were loving and caring and the boy had a happy childhood.
- 6) Have you noticed the broken kitchen window? I wonder who done it.
- 7) Jane's last words whispered into my ear were, "I'll always remember you."
- 8) The class was busy working. There was no sound except a sound of turning pages.
- 9) The trees growing in front of the school were given to us a present.
- 10) I love to look at playing children.
- 11) The picture drawn by my little brother is a portrait of a family.
- 12) The falling leaves soon covered everything in our little garden.

9 Read these pairs of words and use them to complete the sentences¹ below.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| 1) giving — given | 6) preparing — prepared |
| 2) buying — bought | 7) speaking — spoken |
| 3) singing — sung | 8) eating — eaten |
| 4) showing — shown | 9) forgetting — forgotten |
| 5) asking — asked | 10) fascinating — fascinated |

¹ Составьте русскую грамматическую причастия.

- 1) a) The examples ... in the text were very unusual.
- b) The theatre ... "Macbeth" is closing its season.
- 2) a) We usually eat vegetables ... in the market.
- b) The woman ... apples at the counter² is my aunt.
- 3) a) Right before Christmas one can see groups of ... children collecting charity² money.
- b) A new song ... by a popular singer may soon become a hit.
- 4) a) On his desk stood a picture ... him and his family.
- b) The film ... on Channel 1 at prime time was watched by millions of TV viewers.
- 5) a) It's difficult to say "no" to people ... for help.
- b) The question ... by the child surprised the grown-ups.
- 6) a) The pupils ... for the examinations were given some extra classes.
- b) I like soups ... by my mother and no one else's.
- 7) a) English ... in America sounds different from English ... in Britain.
- b) People ... English have better possibilities to find a good job.
- 8) a) This dish ... with a lot of tomato ketchup is one of my favourite.
- b) Children ... a lot of junk food put their health at risk.
- 9) a) How can I love someone ... my birthday?
- b) This story ... long ago was suddenly remembered and turned into a film.
- 10) a) Camping at the seaside The idea was ... enough.
- b) The child stood in front of the cage ... by the beautiful bright birds in it.

10 Learn some words to be able to speak about books, **20** (26). Different books present written material in the form of:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| novels [nɒvls] — повести | fairy-tales [ˈfeəriˈteɪls] — сказки |
| plays [pleɪz] — пьесы | legends [ˈledʒənz] — легенды |
| poems [pəʊms] — поэмы | short stories or stories — рассказы, рассказы |

¹ a monster [ˈmɒnstə] — чудовище
² a counter [ˈkaʊntə] — прилавок

³ charity [ˈtʃærɪti] — благотворительность

Stories can be different

- adventure stories
- love stories
- mystery stories
- crime stories
- horror stories
- war stories
- science fiction¹

Work in pairs. Ask each other and answer the questions.

- 1) What famous Russian novels do you know? When were they written? Who were their authors? Have you read any of them?
- 2) How long did it take you to read the last novel you have read? What was it? Why did you begin reading it? What do you think its characters² are like?
- 3) Do you know any English-speaking novelists [novelists]? Can you name any novels they have written? Have you read any of them? If you have, what do you think of them, their characters?
- 4) Is it easy to read plays? Have you read any plays? If so, what was your impression of some of them? Have you seen the same play at the theatre? Don't you think it is easier to see more interesting to watch plays in the theatre than to read them?
- 5) Do you know any names of Russian or foreign dramatists? Names of their plays? Have you seen them at the theatre or on television?
- 6) Do you like poems? Do you often read poems? Do you read poems to yourself? Do you like to read them out loud? Do you think people should be taught to read, understand and love poetry? Have you ever tried to write poems yourself? What famous Russian or foreign poets do you know? Can you recite any of the poems?
- 7) What were your favourite fairy tales in your childhood? Do you read fairy tales? Do you like them?
- 8) Do you know any fables by I. A. Krylov? Do you know any other people who wrote/write fables? Do you like them?
- 9) A legend is a story about heroes [heroes] of long ago. Do you know any? Have you heard them/about them? Have you read them?

¹ science fiction — sci-fi [saɪˈfi] — научная фантастика

² a character [ˈkærɪktə] — герой, действующее лицо литературного произведения, персонаж, фильм

Do It on Your Own

Read the text given below and make it complete with the words from the forms on the right.



Library

A library is a place where books and documents are kept. ⁽¹⁾ help ⁽²⁾ with the books they need. They also can help with some ⁽³⁾. There are ⁽⁴⁾ kinds of libraries. In some, you can borrow books to take them home. In others, students and ⁽⁵⁾ use the books and documents for their work. People have used libraries for as long as men have known how to write. Libraries have helped people a lot in the field of ⁽⁶⁾.

library, read
inform
differ

science

educate

Express the same in English.

A. 1) Поклоняющаяся девушка; 2) слованный мост; 3) улыбающийся ребенок; 4) тинающие люди; 5) вымытая машина; 6) загрязненный воздух; 7) посевное дерево; 8) дерущиеся мальчики; 9) переведенная книга; 10) бегущая собака; 11) потерянный билет.

B. 1) Далеко, приготовленный летом; 2) замок, построенный в XIII веке; 3) стихотворение, выученное наизусть; 4) книга, выданная детям; 5) вопрос, заданный учителем; 6) путник, встречавший брата; 7) легковая машина, управляемая женщиной; 8) автограф, вырванный на юге; 9) комната, украшенная цветами; 10) чага, потерянные на берегу реки.

C. 1) Птица, летящая в небо; 2) женщина, обнимающая своего сына; 3) ребенок, плавающий в море; 4) спортсмен, набирающий

цайлся на гору; 5) компьютер, сочиняющий (пишущий) перл; 6) звезда, прибывающий на стадион; 7) фабрика, перерабатывающая отходы; 8) ученик, декламирующий стихи; 9) женщина, спящая в кресле; 10) бабушка, целующая внука на ночь.

Section Three

Do It Together

1. A. Listen to the text about two writers. [27], and compare with the help of the table.

	Jules Verne	Herbert George Wells
wrote science-fiction stories		
wrote in English		
wrote about flying to other planets		
wrote about people on the Moon		
wrote for newspapers		
taught at school		
made people think about serious problems		

- B. Match the names of the books with their authors¹.



Jules Verne



Herbert J. Wells

¹ an author ['ɔːθə] — автор

Around the World in Eighty Days
Journey to the Centre of the Earth
The Invisible Man
The War of the Worlds
The Time Machine
Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea

2. Make participle I or participle II of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.

- This newspaper (read) by millions of people is very popular.
- The face of the actor (play) in the new film isn't familiar at all.
- The news (broadcast) in the evening is one of the most popular programmes on television.
- These textbooks (prepare) for the lesson should be taken to the classroom.
- They lived in a small town (situate) on the bank of a big river.
- Some pupils (write) stories for children's newspapers later become professional journalists.
- Who is the boy (stand) in front of the others?
- "At Bertram's Hotel" (choose) for our homereading classes was written by Agatha Christie.
- Some (develop) countries have very serious financial problems.
- Julia's husband had found a better (pay) job.

Focus on Grammar

Структуры с творным причастием (participle I) в английском языке могут соответствовать русскому деепричастному обороту или придаточному предлогу.

- closing the window — закрывая окно/а то время как (к) закрывал окно...
reading the newspaper — читая газету/когда я читал газету...
sitting in the mountains — катаясь в горах на лыжах/когда я катался на лыжах.

3. Express the same in Russian.

- The old man sat in an armchair looking through a thick magazine.
- The office receiving a quarterly¹ periodical is situated in the centre.
- Reading British daily papers you can get information about important happenings everywhere in the world.

¹ quarterly ['kwɔːtlɪ] — ежеквартально

4) Crossing the street he was stopped by a police officer. 5) In writing detective stories usually have a very rich imagination. 6) Writing a letter she tried to tell her parents how interesting her life has become. 7) Doing my shopping on Saturday I met across a friend of mine whom I haven't seen for five years. 8) My pupils writing articles¹ to our school newspaper are our "journalists". 9) Listening to a new American song she couldn't understand a word. 10) Driving home Helen realized that something was wrong with her car.



Focus on Word-building

Прилагательные к английским именам могут быть образованы при помощи суффиксов: -ly и -al.

ly

week + ly = weekly (еженедельный)

month + ly = monthly (ежемесячный)

quarter + ly = quarterly (ежеквартальный)

day + ly = daily (ежедневный)

al

classical — классический

annual — ежегодный

chemical — химический

formal — формальный, официальный

sensational — сенсационный

4 Complete the sentences using the Focus table above.

1) "Hello" is a ... magazine published in Florida every week. 2) ... magazine. 3) "The Times" is a ... British paper published every day except Sunday. 4) Every year we have our ... meeting of graduates. It usually happens in spring. 5) Her answer was ... friendly at all. 6) When are you going to have your next ... meeting? Last month it was held on the 22nd of September. 7) ... males² which appear 4 times a year are ... magazines. 8) What a lovely dress! You look ..., dear!

¹ an article ['ɑ:tlɪk] — статья

² a journal — a magazine containing articles relating to a particular subject (a medical journal, a scientific journal, etc.)

Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [28], and repeat

A.

push [pʊʃ] — толкать

through [θru:] — сквозь

earn [ɜ:n] — зарабатывать

sell [sel] — продавать

publish ['pʌblɪʃ] — печатать,

публиковать

private ['praɪvət] — частный,

личный

general ['dʒenərəl] — общий

article ['ɑ:tlɪk] — статья

type [taɪp] — печатать (на

печатной машине, компью-

тере)

print [prɪnt] — печатать (кни-

ги, фотографии)

cheap [tʃeɪp] — дешевый

B.

push (v): to push hard, to push a trolley, to push sb/sth away. Ann gently pushed him away. The boy was pushing a trolley around the supermarket.

through (prep) (adv): through the forest, through the window, through the tunnel. It's not easy to drive through the city at this time of the day. To be through with sth: Are you through with your work yet?

earn (v): to earn money, to earn high marks, I earned fifty dollars working at the post-office. To earn one's living: He has been earning his living since fourteen.

sell (sold, sold) (v): to sell a car, to sell for some money. We sold the old bicycle for twenty-five dollars.

publish (v): to publish a book (magazine, newspaper). We publish a weekly newspaper at school.

private (ad/j): a private school, a private driveway, a private teacher, private life. You can't park there, it's a private driveway.

general (ad/j): general education, a general idea, a general description, a general meeting. The gallery was open to the general public. In general (n): In general the weather here is very good.

article (n): to read an article, to write an article for a newspaper, an article on/about sb/sth. We read an interesting article about this actress in our local newspaper.

type (v): to type quickly, to type well. I didn't know you could type.

print (v): to print in colour, to print in black and white. You can print on both sides of the paper. Machines print words and pictures on paper. A printer: a colour printer.

cheap {əd/ʃ:} cheap milk, cheap material, a cheap restaurant. Where does your granny buy such cheap and vegetables?

6 A. What can be *private*, *cheap* and *general*? Complete the charts.



B. Make 3–4 sentences with each adjective.

7 Answer the questions using the new words.

1) Have you ever earned any money? When was it? What did you do? 2) Do you think teenagers should work and earn money? Why? 3) What can you see when you look from the window of your room? 4) What newspapers are published and sold at a place where you live? 5) What do you prefer to buy: cheap clothes that you can change rather often or expensive clothes that last for longer time? Why? 6) Do you type your letters when you want to send them or do you generally write them? 7) Articles on what subjects interest you most? Where do you read them?

8 Read the text and complete it with the following. Listen to the audio (29) and check your answers.

- a) are very successful
- b) their problems
- c) in all parts of Britain
- d) shock and excite
- e) computer technology
- f) one of the few countries
- g) throw the others away
- h) profession, sport, hobby or interest

THE  TIMES

THE Daily Telegraph

THE INDEPENDENT

Daily Mail

Britain is ⁽¹⁾, where daily newspapers are brought at the door before breakfast. Paperboys or girls push the papers¹ through letterboxes before going to school. For them it is a way of earning some extra money.

The national papers

National newspapers are papers which are sold ⁽²⁾. They fall into two groups: quality [ˈkwɒlɪti] papers² and popular papers. Quality papers give national and international news. They also publish articles on many general subjects. The famous quality papers are "The Times", "The Daily Telegraph", "The Independent". The popular papers such as "The Daily Mail" or "The Sun" try to make news sensational [sɪnˈseɪʃnəl]. They often publish "personal" articles which ⁽³⁾. Much of their information is about the private lives of people who are in the news.

The local news

Local newspapers publish national as well as local news. Some of them have a high standard of reporting and ⁽⁴⁾ ("The Scotsman", "Glasgow Herald"). Many cities and towns have their own daily, evening or weekly papers. They present local news.

¹ a paper = a newspaper
² quality papers — serious papers

Periodicals

Periodicals are published weekly, monthly, or quarterly. There are about 7,000 periodicals in the United Kingdom. Many of them are women's magazines. There are periodicals for almost every...

New developments

There has been a revolution in the printing of newspapers. Many of them now use (8) to replace old and expensive methods of printing. Now journalists can type their articles into a computer system which then prints articles automatically and cheaply.

Newspaper structure

British daily papers are published from Monday to Saturday. Quality papers are very thick, much thicker than Russian papers. They usually consist of sections such as Politics, Culture, Finance, Business, etc. Newspaper readers often use only one or two sections and (9).

Popular papers or tabloids often publish cartoons and humorous drawings, a lot of photographs and readers' letters.

Nearly all newspapers write about sports news and publish crossword puzzles.

Writing to the newspapers

Writing to the newspapers and periodicals is a popular pastime for many people. Some women write letters about (10). All the letters are answered. The most interesting — and colourful — are published.

8 Read the text "The Press" again and say what the following words mean.

1) A paperboy is ...

- a) a boy who works for a newspaper publisher
- b) a boy who buys newspapers
- c) a boy who brings newspapers to people's homes

2) A letterbox is ...

- a) where your post is put
- b) where you put your post
- c) where you keep letters

¹ The Sunday papers in Britain are special editions, different from the daily papers, one of the most popular is the Sunday Times.

2) Quality papers are ...

- a) papers that write about quality things
- b) papers that are published on quality paper¹
- c) papers that write about different things in a serious way

4) Local news is ...

- a) news published in local papers
- b) news about what happens in some locality
- c) news about the local administration

5) To replace is ...

- a) to find a new place for something
- b) to change something for something new or different
- c) to forget where you have placed something

6) A thick paper is ...

- a) a paper that has many pages
- b) a paper that has many sections
- c) a paper that gives serious information

7) Cartoons are ...

- a) funny photos
- b) humorous texts
- c) humorous drawings

8) Colourful letters are ...

- a) interesting and impressive letters
- b) letters written on colour paper
- c) letters illustrated with pictures



Focus on Vocabulary

Прочитайте статью о газетах и выберите слово, которое лучше всего подходит к каждому из пунктов.

1) to print — печатать, переносить на бумагу текст при помощи печатного станка, типографии. The book is beautifully printed on good quality paper.

2) to publish — печатать, распространять, выкладывать в свет, издавать.

3) to type — печатать (на печатном станке, машинке, компьютере).

We are going to print only 5,000 copies of this novel.

Has Dan Brown's new novel been published yet?

Advice: I would like you to type this article for me.

What's the difference: to type on a typewriter

to type in/into a computer

to type the details into a computer

The letter was typed on an electronic typewriter.

¹ quality paper — бумага хорошего качества, качественная бумага

when she does, she prefers serious reading. She chooses books carefully. There is one book she reads all the time.

- a) A Princess in Tatters
- b) The Bible
- c) The Animals Came in One by One

2 Speak about a newspaper or a magazine. Here are some ideas.

1) What is it like?

national	thin
local	serious
thick	popular

2) What can a reader find in it?

Information on:

politics	everyday problems
business	latest news
economics	sports
finance	weather
science	TV programme
culture	

Stories of:

pop stars	public people
-----------	---------------

Advice on:

cooking	making clothes
---------	----------------

Reviews on:

new films	CDs
books	plays

Also:

advertisements	humorous stories and jokes ¹
photos	
cartoons	

3) For whom is it?

young children	grows ups
teenagers	everybody
young people	

¹ a joke [dʒɒk] — шутка

4) Why do you like/dislike it?

entertaining	giving useful information
colourful	easy to read
fascinating	reliable ¹
dull and boring	too serious
colourless	not reliable



Focus on Grammar

Participle 1 часто встречается в следующих сочетаниях:

to have fun playing (talking, dancing, etc.) — получать удовольствие, играть, и т. д.;

to have difficulty reading (speaking, buying, etc.) — иметь сложности в чтении и т. д.;

to have trouble typing (discussing, getting, etc.) — иметь затруднения, печаль, и т. д.;

to have a good (wonderful) time (skating, swimming, riding, etc.) — хорошо провести время, кататься на лыжах, и т. д.;

to have a hard time working (doing, cleaning, etc.) — делать что-то с трудом.

1 A. Insert *fun, trouble, difficulty, a good (wonderful) time, a hard time* in the sentences to make them complete.



1) Last summer we had ... travelling about Italy. The weather was fantastic and we had a lot of fun.



2) I had a lot of ... trying to get to the railway station on time. There were so many cars in the streets.

¹ reliable [rɪ'laɪəbəl] — достоверный, надежный



3) Jessica had some ... understanding people in the north of England. Their accent was too strong for her.



4) The children had ... playing snowballs and skiing in the forest. They liked their trip to the hills.



5) The Greens had ... living in a small house together with some other families.

B. Finish the phrases and make up your own sentences with them.
 to have fun (doing what?)...
 to have difficulty (doing what?)...
 to have trouble (doing what?)...
 to have a good/hard time (doing what?)...

4 Look at the pictures and describe them using the combinations from **Focus table** on p. 91.



1) Victor / to do homework



2) Lucy / to make a dress



3) Vera and her friends / to skate



4) Tom and Sam / to ride home



5) The teenagers / to swim, to lie in the sun, to go boating

Focus on Grammar

ing-forms (V_{ing})

В английском языке, помимо participia I, довольно часто встречаются и другие словосочетания, в которые входит слово с аффиксом -ing: например, на русский язык они могут переводиться неопределенной формой причастия — *begin writing* (начать писать) или именем существительным — *begin painting* (заклеивать стены).

Кроме того, после которых употребляются подобные формы, следует запомнить.

I. Verb + V_{ing}

start/begin playing
 finish/stop reading
 love/hate singing
 keep coming
 enjoy dancing
 mind opening

II. Go + V_{ing}

go boating
 go fishing
 go dancing
 go skiing
 go shopping

* Грамматические формы, объединяющие в себе признаки причастия и существительного, называются причастными существительными (gerunds).

8 Choose the item that is true about you or give your own version.

- 1) I started ... when I was rather young.
 - a) going to school
 - b) reading books
 - c) playing the piano
 - d) working on the computer
- 2) When I do the sights of an unknown city, I enjoy ...
 - a) being alone
 - b) having my friends with me
 - c) taking pictures
 - d) walking
- 3) My favourite pastime is to go ...
 - a) dancing
 - b) swimming
 - c) shopping
 - d) fishing
- 4) There's nothing I enjoy more than ...
 - a) reading a good novel
 - b) watching a video with my friends
 - c) dancing at a disco
 - d) playing different games
- 5) I never mind ...
 - a) having an evening out
 - b) staying at home for a quiet evening
 - c) dancing at a disco
 - d) working on a computer
- 6) I hate it when people keep me ...
 - a) talking for very long
 - b) doing things that I shouldn't
 - c) waiting
 - d) explaining the same things several times
- 7) I never go ... these days.
 - a) jogging¹
 - b) skiing
 - c) horse riding
 - d) camping

9 Use -ing forms and say what

- 1) you prefer doing on Sunday morning and Saturday evening
- 2) you enjoy doing in summer, autumn, spring and winter
- 3) you love/hate doing most of all
- 4) you (never) mind doing
- 5) you keep doing all your life
- 6) you begin/start doing as soon as you come home from school

¹ jogging ['dʒɒɡɪŋ] — бег-эспрессо



Focus on Vocabulary

основным значением на использование конструкции с *mind* после глагола *mind* — воздержаться, иметь что-то против.

Сменим два фокуса.

1) I don't mind opening the door.

2) I don't mind your opening the door.

В первом случае творческий человек, что он сам не прочь открыть дверь. Во втором — он просит сделать это другого человека.

Второй модель в современном английском языке может включать в себя как продолжительные действия (*my, your, his, her, our, their*), так и личные местоимения в объектном падеже (*me, you, him, her, us, them*).

We don't mind my/me doing it.

Would you mind his/him coming late?

We don't mind their/their joining us.

Если вместо местоимения в предложении использовать имя существительное, возможны также два варианта.

Mother doesn't mind John/John's coming now.

They don't mind the girl/girl's answering first.

1 Say what these people are being asked to do.

It's a m p l e Would you mind washing this car?



1) The car looks very dirty.



2) This text must be read.



3) The elderly¹ woman wants to go home.



4) The plants need to be watered.

elderly ['eldəli] — старенький



5) It's too late to watch television.



6) The homework has to be completed.



7) The rain is getting in through the open window.



8) The guests want to hear a song.



9) The word is written wrong.

What do these people say?

Example Ann wants to go to the disco. She wants to know if her mother is against it. — Mum, would you mind my going to the disco?



1) There is no food in the fridge, so it's necessary to go shopping. Alice has nothing against doing it herself.



2) Helen wants to invite Sally to the party. She would like to know if her parents are not against it.



3) It is cold in the room. Simon asks Ted to close the window.



4) It is too hot in the room for Mrs Collins. But she is not sure that everybody will be happy if she opens the window.



5) Granny wants to read "The People's Friend", a famous British story magazine. She asks if Jean will agree to buy it for her.



6) It's time to take Father's suit to the cleaner's. Maggie thinks her younger sister Mary can do it. She asks her father if he agrees.



7) Duncan's mother asks if he will agree to cut the grass in the garden.



8) Mr Grant wants to know if his wife Lily would agree to go to Greece for their holiday.



9) Kate wants to know if Ruby will agree to type some information into the computer for her.



10) Doris is not sure that her friend Carol would like to travel about Scotland together with their friend Max.

Focus on Vocabulary

Если ты посмотрела на заголовки статей в английских газетах, то можешь заметить, что в их конце есть свои особенности.

✓ В заголовках обычно отсутствуют артикли и такие служебные слова, как вспомогательные глаголы.

✓ Газетные заголовки в одной из простых форм, часто в настоящем времени.

✓ Вместо формы будущего времени нередко встречается неопределённая форма глагола.

✓ В заголовках часто употребляются сокращения.

✓ Заголовок статьи или репортажа должен привлечь внимание читателя, поэтому многие из них строятся на ярких образных выражениях или идиомах.

Example: MP speaks of struggle to get son into special school
Newspaper to be sold for \$4.5 Bn

Have the best holiday of all... in your own home

9 Match the headlines (a-g) with the ideas of the articles (1-7).



- a) Thomas Whale Dies
- b) Kia to Build Plant
- c) \$50 M Expansion for Kremlin Museum
- d) Americans Prefer Russia
- e) Athletics Get Set¹ for Melbourne

¹ В американском английском выражение: Get set — (выскакивать, начинать) — наче, внимание «On your mark — get set go!» (вставай, внимание) — готово!»

- f) Global and Local News to Be Brought to Every Home in Moscow
- g) Papers not Printed

1) One of the biggest South Korean carmakers is planning to begin making its world-famous cars in Georgia.

2) The *International Herald Tribune* and *The Moscow Times* are starting a new project together. Soon Russian readers will be able to get their new periodicals daily.

3) A big sea animal got into the river. People tried to help it but could not.

4) One of the most important historic places in Moscow is getting a present on its 200th birthday — a new building for the growing collection.

5) Three of Belarus' few independent newspapers stopped being published.

6) Sportsmen from 53 countries are in final preparations for this week's Games.

7) The poll¹ organized by the University of Connecticut shows that people in the country have begun to feel more kindly to our motherland.

Do It on Your Own

Insert -ing forms of these verbs to complete the sentences.

bathe, do, look, cook, read, find, smile, shop, invite, play

- 1) I had a lot of trouble ... the book you wanted. 2) The children usually have much fun ... handball on the playground. 3) Agnes kept ... though she felt like crying. 4) In summer my brother and I go ... in the Lake District. 5) Jenny stopped ... and closed her book. 6) Mum, I don't mind ... the flat at all. I simply don't have time now. 7) In my family my parents go ... every Saturday. They usually do it at the nearest supermarket. 8) The old ladies had a lot of fun ... through their school photographs. 9) My elder sister hates ..., she prefers to eat out. 10) Dad, do you mind my ... Nick to dinner on Sunday?

¹ poll [pɒl] — опрос общественного мнения

11 Express the same in English.

A. 1) Заниматься рыбной ловлей; 2) хорошо проводить время играя в теннис; 3) любить работать в саду; 4) увлечься плаванием; 5) быть не прочь посетить музей; 6) продолжать учиться; 7) иметь сложности с переводом статей; 8) иметь трудности, общаясь по-английски; 9) любить пить.

B. 1) Они занимаются танцами. 2) Мы отлично провели время, катаясь на коньках. 3) Я не прочь сходить в магазин. 4) Открой окно, пожалуйста. (Ты не будешь против, если я открою окно?) 5) Том занялся лыжным спортом, когда жила в горах. 6) Ты не против, если я закрою дверь? 7) Ты не против, если Джон присоединится к нам? 8) Она смотрела на него и продолжала плакать. 9) Я не люблю смотреть телевизор. 10) Ты не против, если мы пойдем вечером в кино?

Section Five

Do It Together

1 A. Listen to the text "The First Printing Press". (31), and complete the sentences below.

1) People began printing texts very early, in the ... century.

- a) 4th b) 5th c) 6th

2) The first printers lived in ...

- a) Europe b) America c) Asia

3) Johann Gutenberg used letters made of ... in his press.

- a) metal b) wood c) stone

4) The first book Gutenberg printed was ...

- a) the Bible b) Dishes c) his biography

5) William Caxton printed his first book ... Johann Gutenberg.

- a) before b) after c) at the same time as

6) Caxton didn't only print books, he also ... them.

- a) illustrated b) wrote c) translated

B. Say what you know about the first printer and the first printed book in Russia.

2 Work in pairs. Make up a story about a happy and an unhappy day. Use -ing forms. Tell your stories to each other.

The enjoyable day

- to go picnicking
- to enjoy (being in the open air, staying in the museum)
- not to mind (helping each other)
- to have a wonderful time (playing, eating)
- to go (boating, fishing)
- to love (singing, dancing)



The unhappy day

- to go picnicking
- to have trouble (cooking, packing)
- to start (raining, snowing)
- to have a hard time (making a fire)
- to keep (blowing, raining)
- to finish (cooking, eating)



Focus on Vocabulary

Phrasal verb to look

- to look — смотреть
 to look at sth — смотреть на что-то. (Daniel looked at his watch.)
 to look through — просматривать. (I have not read the book, I have only looked through it.)

- 3) to look after — заботиться (It's hard work looking after these children all day.)
 4) to look for — искать (He was looking for work as a builder.)
 5) to look forward to sth./to doing sth. — с нетерпением ждать (I'm looking forward to my holidays. I'm looking forward to seeing you again.)

3 Insert the prepositions *after*, *at*, *through*, *for*, *to* to make the sentence complete.

- 1) We are looking forward ... the day when things will be a bit easier.
 2) It's hard work looking ... the three children all day.
 3) John was looking ... work as a manager.
 4) We spent half the morning looking ... the keys.
 5) Would you like to look ... the magazine before I take it?
 6) I'll look ... these files and see if I can find a copy of the letter.
 7) Oscar couldn't see what his aunt was looking ...
 8) They looked ... the dog for us while we were away.
 9) I'm really looking forward ... working with you.
 10) I'm looking ... Jim. Have you seen him anywhere?

4 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [32], and repeat.

A.

reach [ri:tʃ] — достигать
 invent [in'vent] — изобретать
 duty [dʌti] — долг, обязанность
 fair [feə] — честный, справедливый
 suppose [sə'pəʊz] — предполагать
 hold [həʊld] — держать, проводить; проводить

B.

reach (v): to reach the station, to reach the city. We'll soon reach London before dark. They reached Athens in the evening.
 invent (v): to invent something. Who invented the microscope? — Anton van Leeuwenhoek, a Dutchman who lived in the 1600s did. When was printing invented?
 duty (n): to be one's duty. It's your duty to share in the housework. What are your duties as a school secretary? To be on duty to be off duty: Who is on duty today? Doctor Nelson is off duty this weekend.

investigate [in'vestɪɡeɪt] — расследовать
 evidence ['eɪdəns] — свидетельство
 courage ['kʌrɪdʒ] — храбрость, смелость
 rewarding [ri'wɔ:dnɪŋ] — благодарный
 event [ɪ'vent] — событие
 lie [laɪ] — лгать

fair (adj): a fair game, a fair test. Life is not always fair. It is not fair to the others if she is paid more. It is only fair to let him go.
 suppose (v): I suppose you'll be going to the meeting? Yes, I suppose so. Suppose the train's late — what shall we do? To be supposed to do something. You're supposed to make your bed every morning.

hold (held, held) (v): to hold a spoon, to hold by the hand, to hold sth. with both hands. Can you hold my bag for a moment? She was holding the book under her arm. To hold a meeting (party). The meeting will be held next week. We'll hold the X-mas party in the hall. Hold on! (wait on the telephone)

investigate (v): to investigate carefully. The police are investigating the mystery¹ (crime, etc.).

evidence (n): to have a lot of (no, some) evidence. Have you any evidence that they were leaving early in the morning? Her bag on the table was the only evidence of her presence.

courage (n): to show courage, to have the courage to do sth.; it takes courage to do sth. Alan showed real courage saving the children from the fire. It took Sue a lot of courage not to agree.

rewarding (adj): a rewarding job, a rewarding profession. Nursing can be a very rewarding career.

event (n): an important event, a social event, a sporting event, the most tragic event. That night a terrible event happened!

lie (n): to tell a lie, to tell lies, a terrible lie. Don't believe her. She is fond of telling lies!

5 Complete the sentences using your new vocabulary.

- I don't think it's fair ...
- Don't you remember that we are supposed ...?
- It's your duty to ...
- I'm not sure who invented ...
- How can we reach ...?
- I suppose you will ...
- Do you have the courage to ...?
- Can you hold ...?
- Have you any evidence that ...?
- If a person tells lies ...

¹ mystery ['mɪstəri] — тайна

6 Say

- 1) how often you are on duty at school
- 2) what doctors and nurses do when they are on duty
- 3) in what way you reach the school
- 4) who invented the radio, neutron bomb, printing press
- 5) what you are supposed to do when your parents are away
- 6) where you usually hold school (class) meetings and how often you do it
- 7) what rewarding jobs you know
- 8) if you ever tell lies
- 9) in what sporting events do you usually take part
- 10) if you have ever investigated anything
- 11) if you can give any evidence that the world is changing fast

7 A. Read the text and make up titles for the three paragraphs into which the text falls.

Journalists and Journalism

a) ...

Journalism has a long history. The first people who wrote down the news were Roman Senators in the 1st century BC. The first Roman papers were written out in more than 2,000 copies and sent everywhere in the Empire¹. They were hung up in public places. People who could read called out the news to people who could not. For centuries news travelled very slowly and reached few people until the printing press was invented in the 15th century. The first printed papers were published in Germany and Belgium in the early 17th century.

b) ...

In most countries the press is taken very seriously. Journalists-to-be get special training in universities. Their duty is to inform the public in everything that happens in the country and abroad. Journalists are supposed to give fair comment on the events and are not supposed to change facts or tell lies. The stars of European and American journalism are very well known to the public and have real influence. Some of them write about politics, others — about economy, culture, morals, sports or other things

¹ an empire [ˈɪmpaɪr] — империя

that interest people. Their articles may be reproduced in hundreds of local papers across the country. Governments understand a special role of the press. The British Parliament invites journalists to its daily question time when MPs address questions to ministers. It has become a tradition in the USA, Russia and some other countries to hold presidential press conferences where presidents speak to the press and answer journalists' questions.

c) ...

Very often journalists do more than just reporting and commenting on events, they investigate crimes or produce evidence of corruption or bad behaviour of officials. Many things that are hidden away become known with the help of journalists. Being a journalist is a difficult and even dangerous profession. One should have a lot of tact as well as courage. But this profession is really rewarding.

B. Listen to the same text, (33), then learn to read it aloud.

1 Find in the text English equivalents for the following:

- 1) экземпляры (газет, журналов)
- 2) извещивали в общественных местах
- 3) громко зачитывать (выкрикивать) новости
- 4) почтовый ящик
- 5) к прессе относятся очень серьезно
- 6) будущие журналисты
- 7) действительно имеют влияние
- 8) некоторые из них пишут о политике
- 9) могут перепечатываться (воспроизводиться) в сотнях мест
- 10) члены парламента
- 11) коррупция и неправильное поведение официальных лиц
- 12) многое из того, что скрыто



Focus on Vocabulary

1. В английском языке служебные слова **til** и **until** имеют 2 значения: две части сложносочиненного предложения не должны стоять в Moscow **til** (until) for you arrives. For centuries news travelled very slowly and reached few people **until** the printing press was invented in the 15th century.

21 **ИСТОЧНИКОВЕЩАНИЕ В КОНЕЦЕ ПОСЛАНИЯ**

I won't see him *at* (until) the end of May.

Общепринято не писать *at* и *until* в исходе сообщения.

8. **СКОЛЬКО ТЫЗОВ** **call** **РАБОТНИК** **ИНФОРМАЦИОННЫМ** **ЦЕНТРОМ** **И** **МОЖЕТ** **ОБЩАТЬСЯ** **С** **НАМИ**.

1) **ИМЯ, НАЗВАНИЕ**

Her name's Elizabeth, but we call her Liz.

2) **СЛОВА, ГЛАГОЛЫ** **СЛОВА**

Did you *call* me?

Hands up, please — don't *call* out.

People who could read *called out* the news to people who could not.

9 Read the text (ex. 7) again and answer the questions.

- 1) Where did the first newspapers appear?
- 2) How could the people of the Roman Empire get the latest news?
- 3) Why did the news travel slowly for many centuries?
- 4) How did the situation change in the 15th–17th centuries?
- 5) In what countries did the first printed papers appear?
- 6) How can a person become a journalist?
- 7) What are journalists supposed to give to the public in their reports?
- 8) Why do you think star journalists have real influence?
- 9) What is a special role of the press nowadays?
- 10) Why is it sometimes difficult and dangerous to be a journalist?

10 Say what you have learnt about journalists and journalism. Follow the plan.

- 1) Newspapers before the 17th century
- 2) Newspapers in the 17th century
- 3) The importance of the press nowadays
 - a) special training for journalists
 - b) special role of journalists
 - c) influence of star journalists
 - d) investigating journalism
 - e) journalism as a rewarding profession

Do It on Your Own

11 Complete the sentences using the new words.

- 1) My husband should help look after the child. I think it's only ...
- 2) When you are on ..., you should water the plants in the classroom.
- 3) We are ... to come back early tonight.
- 4) When do you think we'll ... the railway station?
- 5) Could you please ... the plastic bag for me?
- 6) I think the party will be ... on Saturday.
- 7) Do you agree that being a journalist is a ... profession?
- 8) I really believe her. She never tells ...
- 9) Some people say that nowadays it is difficult to ... something new.
- 10) It took me a lot of ... to tell him that he was wrong.
- 11) How do you know about the airplane crash? — I read about this tragic ... in today's newspaper.
- 12) Do you have any ... that he knew about these facts?

12 Express the same in English.

A. 1) быть документом; 2) жить; 3) несправедливо; 4) предполагать; 5) держать что-то двумя руками; 6) держать книгу под мышкой; 7) расследовать преступление; 8) проводить собрание; 9) не класть трубку (телефона); 10) иметь смелость сделать что-то; 11) важное событие.

B. 1) Я с нетерпением жду встречи с вами в Москве. 2) Я просмотрел эту писемку, пока ты шёл в кафе. 3) Не смотри на меня так! Я потеряла ключи и не могу их найти. 4) Не могла бы ты приглядеть за моей кошкой, пока меня не будет? 5) На что ты смотришь? 6) Мы с нетерпением ждём наших пингвинов. 7) Я не читала толстые газеты, а их просматривала. 8) Куда ушла Анна? Я ищу её уже час. 9) Кто приглашает за твоими домашними животными, когда ты уезжаешь? — Моя двоюродная сестра. 10) Посмотри на Джулию. Она выглядит гораздо счастливее сейчас.

Section Six. Consolidation Class

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text about Nikolai Gumiliov, a well-known Russian poet, and say which of the statements below are true and which are false.



- 1) In the poet's early years his greatest pleasure was books.
- 2) The poet began to think about travelling after he visited Tiflis.
- 3) Tiflis was the place where Nikolai's poem first came out in print.
- 4) Nikolai was not an excellent pupil.
- 5) Annensky was an author.
- 6) Nikolai's father wanted his son to see the world, and gave him money to travel to Africa.
- 7) The poet didn't write to his parents from Africa.
- 8) The poet did some scientific work in Africa.

- 2 You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A
invent
investigate
behaviour
courage
rewarding

B
inventive
investigation
misbehaviour
courageous
reward

A
lie
to reach
duty
event
fair

B
to lie
reach
dutiful
eventful
unfair

- 1) What an inventive mind this child had! 2) Alec's misbehaviour is shocking! He has been telling lies about all of us! 3) It was a conscious decision. 4) They gave the old gentleman a gold watch as a reward for his kindness. 5) We had a really eventful day. In the morning we went to the centre of Moscow and did the night of the Kremlin. We had lunch at the tower restaurant and in the evening we went to the Bolshoi Theatre. 6) Irene is a dutiful daughter always doing what her mother asks. 7) Why should you watch television while I do all the things about the house? It's unfair! 8) He said he had never been there but he was lying. 9) We live within easy reach of the shops. 10) The bottle was behind his reach but within ours. 11) She is still under investigation by the Spanish police. 12) His services were rewarded.

- 1 A. Read the text and say what made Lewis Carroll's life unusual.

Lewis Carroll and His Literary Success

Lewis Carroll was an unusual man who led three lives. One was the life of a mathematics don¹ at Oxford University. He loved the subject he taught but his students found him humorous and dry. In his second life he was a child photographer. But he is best remembered as the author of the wonderful book that is read and enjoyed by children and grown ups all over the world. The title of the book is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland".

It happened in July 1862. A 30-year-old Oxford don, the Reverend² Charles Lutwidge Dodgson (that is Lewis Carroll's real name) took out a boat and together with his friend Robinson Duckworth and his three daughters had a river trip. They took tea on the river bank before returning. It was not an unusual event in itself. But the result of that journey was most unusual. Because during this journey Dodgson told the story that an inter-



¹ a don [dʌn] — преподаватель математики (доктор наук) в Оксфордском университете

² a reverend [rɪ'veərənd] — священнослужитель



sited one of the little girls, Alice by name, that she asked Dodgson to write it down for her. Thus Dodgson created one of the best loved and most interesting children's books under the pen-name Lewis Carroll. This pen-name came from his first two names and latinizing them, "Lotwidge... Ludwidge... Lsdovic — Louis and Charlen..."

The book had a great success. As soon as it was published, it became very popular. Together 180,000 copies were sold during Dodgson's lifetime. Nowadays it is difficult to find a child who doesn't know the book and its characters.

As a famous writer Lewis Carroll had a lot of friends. Whenever he was invited to their parties, he entertained children with sto-

ries, games and puzzles ["puzzls"]. But though he had friends he was rather lonely.

Lewis Carroll died on 14 January 1898. It was an attack of bronchitis that turned out to be fatal.

g Listen to the same text, (35), then learn to read it aloud.

4 Read the text again and say

- when Lewis Carroll was born
- what his real name was
- which of his three lives was most successful
- who asked him to write down the story told during a river trip
- from what words his pen-name came
- what in the text shows that "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland" became very popular during Dodgson's lifetime
- what in the text shows that the book is still widely read nowadays
- how Lewis Carroll entertained children
- when he died and why

5 Think which of these adjectives can describe the book "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland".

Unusual, comfortable, successful, beautiful, entertaining, world-wide famous, interesting, loving, eventful, wonderful, unfair, exciting, optimistic, dutiful, brave, boring, courageous, depressing, sensational, daily, formal, general.

6 Say a few words about any piece of literature that you have read. Follow the plan.

- 1) What is it? (novel, play, etc.)
- 2) When was it written?
- 3) Who wrote it?
- 4) What is the story about?
- 5) What are its main characters?
- 6) What impression has it made on you?

* main [maɪn] — summary



- 7 Read the text about Kate's favourite writer and then say a few words about yours.

One of my favourite writers is Agatha Christie, a famous author of crime stories. One of her stories that I read not long ago is "Dumb Witness", a Hercule Poirot mystery. Hercule Poirot is the funny detective who takes himself very seriously and says that his intellect helps him to solve crime cases. Crime stories are very popular nowadays and Christie is one of the best authors of crime stories, though she lived and worked rather long ago.



- 8 Describe one of the libraries that you know of: a) the US Library of Congress; b) Bibliothèque Nationale; c) the Russian State Library; d) the British Library; e) your local library.

Say

- where the library is situated
- how old it is
- how big its collection of books is
- how famous it is
- a few facts about its history or operation

- 9 Work in pairs and discuss the papers and magazines you read. Find out

- what national and local periodicals each of you usually reads
- how often they come out in print
- what their structures are
- what your favourite sections are

You can find these useful

- serious/entertaining/thick/thin magazine (paper)
- a national/local edition
- interesting/funny/unusual materials
- boring/badly-written stories

¹ Dumb [dʌm] Witness ['wɪtnəs] — «blond stupidity»

- exciting articles, full of interesting facts
- optimistic/true-to-life information
- a colourful magazine (paper) with/without photos, posters and pictures
- articles about

- a) sports and famous sportsmen
- b) science
- c) music and pop-stars
- d) medicine



Social English

Learn to speak about differences and similarities in English

- There are a lot of differences between A and B.
- A is quite different from B.
- There is no comparison between A and B. (Меньше А и Б нет никакого сравнения.)
- A and B are really difficult to compare.
- A is no better (worse) than B.
- A and B have a lot in common. (У А и Б много общего.)
- A is quite (just) like B.
- A is just the same as B.

- 10 Compare these things in English.

Example: Two libraries. There is no comparison between the Russian State Library and my local library. The Russian State Library is a lot bigger and has a larger collection of books. It is used by more readers too.

- 1) two newspapers
- 2) two magazines
- 3) two books
- 4) two TV programmes
- 5) two authors
- 6) two towns
- 7) two people
- 8) two buildings
- 9) two cars
- 10) two school subjects

- 11 Read the dialogue, act it out and then make a similar one.



A.: What's that book you're reading?

B.: It's a new story by Alexandra Marinina.

A.: Is it any good?

B.: Of course it is. I enjoy all the books by this author. And why do you sound so skeptical? Don't you read Marinina?

A.: No, I don't. I prefer Boris Akunin.

B.: I think these two authors have a lot in common. They both write crime stories.

A.: That's not as I see it. I think Akunin and Marinina are very difficult to compare. Akunin mostly writes about the past and describes things in rather dark colours, but I still like him.

Do It on Your Own

- 12 Complete the dialogue with the phrases from the *Social English* section.

A.: Is this your newspaper?

B.: Oh, thank you. I thought I had lost it.

A.: Do you always read "Moskovsky Komsomolets"?

B.: I do. It's my favourite paper. Don't you?

A.: No, never. My paper is "Komsomolets".

B.: They both publish practically the same material.

A.: I can't agree with you here. Even if they write about the same things they do it differently.

B.: What do you mean?

A.: I mean that if you look carefully at the two papers, you'll see that "Komsomolets" gives a better analysis of the events and offers more interesting comments.

B.: But both of them are very popular and widely read.

A.: I still think that "MK" is not as serious as "Komsomolets".

B.: OK. Let's agree to differ.

- 13 Write a paragraph with the topic sentence *Journalists play an important role in modern life*. Remember to mention these:

- if it is necessary to get a special education to become a journalist
- where one can get this education
- personal characteristics necessary for this job
- if it is necessary to give their comment on the events
- if journalists should give their opinion of the problem or just state facts
- if being a journalist is a rewarding though often a dangerous profession
- the name of a journalist you like/dislike (explain why)

Section Seven. Creative Writing

Do It Together

- 1 Unit 1 (Step 7) told you what a paragraph is. Now it's time to learn how to write a paragraph. Doing it is useful to follow these steps:

- 1) Prewriting¹
- 2) Writing a draft²
- 3) Revising and proofreading³
- 4) Making a final copy

Prewriting is the thinking and planning you do before you begin to write. Writing is easier if you think and plan first.

- 2 Choose a topic for writing. Ask yourself questions about people, places, animals, or events that interest you. For example: Where would I like to go? What have I done lately that was fun? What would I like to know more about?

List some topics. Think about each one. Choose the topic that gives you the most ideas. (Sometimes topics are already chosen for you.)

Write your topic in the middle of the page. Then put down as many ideas about your topic as you can.

- ¹ prewriting [ˌpriːˈraɪtɪŋ] — подготовка к написание
² a draft [draɪft] — черновик
³ revising and proofreading [ˌrɪvɪzɪŋ ˌpruːfˈreɪdɪŋ] — проверка

- 1 A One girl, Julia, decided to write about Moscow, the city where she lives. Read what ideas she has written.



- Moscow
- my home city
- the capital of RF
- things my friends and I like to do together
- theatres, cinemas, museums
- factories and plants
- monuments and other places of interest
- 9 May, 1945
- films I like to watch
- has a lot of parks
- cultural centre
- centre of science
- an interesting place to visit
- university life
- the food I like

2 Julia read her ideas and chose the main idea of her paragraph: *Moscow is an interesting place to visit*. What is the topic sentence of Julia's paragraph?

C Read Julia's list of ideas again and decide if all of them belong in the paragraph. Cross out those which do not. If you think of new ideas, add them to the list. Decide in what order you should present these ideas, in other words, make a plan of the paragraph.

- 4 Making a draft is your first try¹ at writing your ideas as sentences. Write a draft of a paragraph with the topic sentence – *Moscow is an interesting place to visit*. Write a sentence about each idea in your plan.

- 5 Learn to revise your paragraphs. Your draft is not your finished paragraph. Usually you can improve it. Revising is making changes to improve your writing. Some of your sentences may not be about the main idea. Cross them out. You might add more sentences to your paragraph if you think it is important.

- 6 Revise the draft of the paragraph you have written (ex A). Ask yourself the questions.

- 1) Is the paragraph easy to understand?
- 2) Is every group of words a sentence?

- to come out – выскочить
- to try – попытка

- 3) Do all the sentences tell about the main idea? Should any sentence be taken out?
- 4) Does the paragraph need more sentences?
- 5) Are the sentences in the best order?

7 Another girl, Ann, decided to write a paragraph about books. Here is her revised paragraph. Its main idea is — *People read less in the new Millennium than before.* Notice how Ann has changed her paragraph. Can you explain why each change has been made?

People don't read as much as they used to in the new Millennium. Why is it so?
 I like reading books very much. ^{for example,} My brother reads only the books
 he is asked to read at school. ^{first of all,} It is easier to get the information you need
 from the Internet. ^{Then,} It is more interesting to watch a film (a screen version
 of the book) than to read this book. ^{And we shouldn't forget that} Books are very expensive nowadays.
 Many children prefer computers to books. ←

8 Learn to proofread paragraphs. Proofreading means reading carefully looking for mistakes in grammar and spelling, punctuation [pə'kju:tʃən] and capitalization¹.

Ask yourself these questions:

- 1) Is the first line indented²?
- 2) Did you use the right verb form in each sentence?
- 3) Does every sentence and every proper noun begin with a capital letter?
- 4) Does every sentence have the correct end mark?
- 5) Are all the words spelled correctly?

¹ capitalization [ˌkæpɪtə'leɪʒən] — *написание с заглавной буквы*

² indented line — *сдвинутая строка*

9 Here is part of John's proofread [ˈpru:fri:d] paragraph about his favourite book. Notice the corrections he has made in it.



I like books about pirates and their adventures. In Spring I decided what
 I would read. ^{Robert Lively} I would read «Treasure Islands» by Stephenson. My father told me that
 this is a very interesting book full of adventures.

A Think about the changes John made. Can you explain why each change was made?

C Read your draft carefully. Think of how you can improve it. Revise and proofread it.

D Make a final copy of your paragraph.

Do It on Your Own

A Read this list of ideas. Decide which of them you can make the main idea of the paragraph. Write a complete topic sentence that tells the main idea.

- swim in salt water
- watch the blue sea
- build sandcastles
- lie on the sand

- enjoy the sun
- play beach ball
- feel pleased and happy
- wonderful time on the beach

¹ treasure [ˈtreɪzə] — *сокровище*

B Write a draft paragraph.

C Revise and proofread your paragraph.

D Write a final copy of your paragraph.

- 11 A Here is a list of ideas to write a paragraph. Its main idea is *Dogs are great pets*. Copy only the ideas that tell about the main idea. Add two or three ideas that belong in the paragraph. Decide what the topic sentence is.



- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1) dogs love people | 5) you can play with dogs |
| 2) dogs protect people | 6) dogs are warm and soft |
| 3) some people like cats | 7) dogs don't live very long |
| 4) you can play with rats | 8) dogs are true friends |

B Write a draft of this paragraph, revise and proofread it, and make it final copy.

- 12 A Dan's little brother, Louis, has written a letter to the Queen, but he can't spell very well. Find six spelling mistakes in his letter and correct them.

Dear Queen,

I'm Louis. I'm eit and I live in London. Your house, Buckingham Palace, is not far from my school. I'd lik to come to visit you for a cup of tea. I really like dogs and horsta and I'd like to meet Prince Williams and Prince Harry.

Louis
Louis

B Now you write a letter to the Queen. Have two or three paragraphs in your letter. You may write about your hobbies, your family, your house, your town, your favourite school subjects or about what you know and like about England.

Unit 3



Science and Technology

Section One

Do It Together

- 1 A Listen to the song. (36), and say what it is about.

B Read the lyrics and sing the song along.

The Winner Takes It All

(Benny Andersson, Björn Ulvæus)

I don't wanna talk...
about the things we've gone through
though it's hurting me
now it's history
I've played all my cards
and that's what you've done too
nothing more to say
no more ace to play.

The winner takes it all
the loser standing small
beside the victory
that's her destiny

I was in your arms
thinking I belonged there
I figured it made sense —

= want to

причинив боль

туз (в карточной игре)

победивший маленький

судьба

подумав(а), что это при-
вильно

building me a fence
 building me a home
 thinking I'd be strong there
 but I was a fool
 playing by the rules

The gods may throw a dice
 their minds as cold as ice
 and someone way down here
 loses someone dear
 the winner takes it all
 the loser has to fail
 it's simple and it's plain
 why should I complain

But tell me does she kiss
 like I used to kiss you
 does it feel the same
 when she calls your name
 somewhere deep inside
 you must know I miss you
 but what can I say
 rules must be obeyed

The judges will decide
 the likes of me abide
 spectators of the show
 always staying low
 the game is on again
 a lover or a friend
 a big thing or a small
 the winner takes it all

I don't wanna talk
 if it makes you feel sad
 and I understand
 you've come to shake my hand
 I apologize
 if it makes you feel bad
 seeing me so tense
 no self-confidence

But you see
 the winner takes it all

осрада

глупый(ая)

боги, бросить кости (и игра)
 рассудок

просто
 жаловаться

в рабине души

люди вроде меня не выносят

несчастные, грустные

просту прощения

в напряженном состоянии
 уверенность в себе

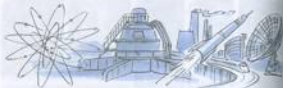
say if it is true or false.



- 1) Russia was the first country in the world to send man into space¹.
- 2) Dmitry Mendeleev worked on radioactivity all his life.
- 3) Earth is not the biggest planet in the solar² system.
- 4) Russian cosmonauts [kosmonavts] landed on the Moon in 1969.
- 5) Isaac Newton lived in the 17th century and studied physical laws.
- 6) Platinum is the most expensive metal in the world.
- 7) Ivan Pavlov had a lot of discoveries in the field of atomic energy.
- 8) On the Earth, an astronaut in his spacesuit weighs about 135 kg. But on the Moon he is six times heavier.
- 9) Alexander Popov invented the radio in 1895.
- 10) The first living being in space was a cat called Barik, that orbited the Earth on the Soviet spaceship in 1957.
- 11) Valentina Tereshkova was the first woman cosmonaut to travel into space.

¹ space [speɪs] — космос, космическое пространство
² solar [səʊlə] — солнечный

1 A. Read the text "What Is Science and What Is Technology" and what is the main difference between science and technology.



What Is Science and What Is Technology?

What is Science? What is Technology? These are not easy questions. People don't often see the difference between them, but they are different though¹ the two are connected.

Science studies the physical world. Trying to answer questions about this world of ours scientists ask "what" and "why" questions. "What" questions are usually answered in a rather simple way. For example we have a question: "What kind of animals live in that pond?" The answer to the question is: "Frogs, fish and reptiles." "Why" questions are much more difficult, they ask for explanation.

Technology is the use of science for practical purposes² especially³ in industry. Technology is also methods and machines that are used in doing things in a science or profession. Technology often asks "how" questions and answers them. Some technologies can not function without science, but there are many modern technologies that developed from old technologies without any help of science. It often happened in history that people made things and after that science tried to explain them. For example, first guns appeared and then ballistics as a science did.

During certain periods in history innovations in technology have grown so fast that they resulted in industrial revolutions⁴.

B. Listen to the same text, (37), and learn to read it aloud.

¹ though [θɒ] — хотя

² purpose [pɜːps] — цель

³ especially [ɪˈspɪʃli] — особенно

⁴ an industrial revolution — промышленная революция

Did You Know That...?

An Industrial Revolution is a period of time when machines are invented and factories begin to appear which brings a lot of changes into peoples' lives. The Industrial Revolution began in Britain during the 18th century and spread to many of the European countries, such as Belgium, France, Germany, throughout the 19th and early part of the 20th centuries, as well as to North America. This led to the transformation of these countries into industrial rather than agricultural ones. For Russia and Japan, industrialization began to develop rapidly in the 1st decade of the 20th century. Nowadays some people think that computers and automation can bring about a new Industrial Revolution.

Answer the questions.

- 1) What does science study?
- 2) Chemistry, physics, biology are sciences. Can you give the names of some other sciences?
- 3) How does technology use science(s)?
- 4) What are the two meanings of the word *technology*?
- 5) Does science or technology offer explanations to natural facts, processes?
- 6) Why do people say that science and technology are connected?
- 7) How can technology help science(s)?
- 8) What modern technologies do you know?
- 9) What in your opinion are the most important sciences nowadays?

Focus on Vocabulary

Technology	
технология	технология
science and technology agricultural technology	the technology of making bread the very latest technology
Technique [ˈtɛk.nɪk] — крокодил, рептилия	
modern techniques of business management — крокодиловый менеджмент	

3 A. Say if these are sciences or technologies:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| — making clocks and watches | — car making |
| — medicine | — archeology |
| — house construction | — fruit growing |

- chemistry
- metallurgy
- economics

- navigation
- shipbuilding
- photography

2. Match these sciences and technologies. In each pair which do you think appeared first — the science or the technology?

Sciences

- 1) Electronics
- 2) Biology
- 3) Chemistry
- 4) Ballistics
- 5) Optics
- 6) Linguistics
- 7) Agronomy
- 8) Geometry
- 9) Thermodynamics

Technologies

- a) measuring¹ land
- b) making guns
- c) farming
- d) making microchips
- e) using steam engines²
- f) using telescopes and microscopes
- g) cloning
- h) making new materials
- i) language teaching and learning

Focus on Grammar

Названия наук, а также учебные предметы, склоняются на 4 (mathematics, physics, statistics, economics, linguistics, gymnastics, algebra, chemistry) с падежом в единственном числе. Например:

Mathematics is my favourite subject.

Linguistics is a science studying language in general and individual languages: their grammar, structure, history, etc.

6. Which of the two is right — the plural or the singular?

- 1) Where (is/are) Sally's clothes that she takes for her holiday?
- 2) Mathematics (is/are) a rather difficult subject.
- 3) The glasses that Ann has bought (is/are) not cheap at all.
- 4) The news she brought (is/are) sad and depressing.
- 5) Rick! Your trousers (is/are) dirty.
- 6) She told me she would wait for me at the bottom of the stairs. But where (is/are) the stairs?
- 7) Uncle Toos looked through his cousin's photo album, which (was/were) rather thick.
- 8) I can't say physics (is/are) my favourite subject.
- 9) Acoustics (is/are) a part of physics.
- 10) (Is/are) gymnastics a sport or a game?
- 11) Brussels (is/are) a city in Belgium.

¹ measuring — измерение

² steam engine — паровая locomotive



Focus on Grammar

V-ing forms

Во многих случаях в английском языке после глагола с предлогом или инфинитива оборот с предлогом употребляется так называемые "ing-формы". Например: I am tired of telling you this again and again.

Подобные случаи следует запоминать, обращая особое внимание на предлог.

about	to complain of/about sth./sb. speaking loudly (жаловаться на то, что кто-то громко говорит)
of	to dream of/about going to London (мечтать о поездке в Лондон)
	to talk of/about leaving Moscow
	to think of/about buying the pet
for	to apologize for coming late (извиняться за опоздание)
	to blame sb for missing the train (винить за опоздание на поезд, пропускание т.п.)
	to forgive sb for telling a lie (прощать за обман)
	to thank sb for helping us (благодарить за помощь)
from	to keep sb from going there (не допускать, не пускать куда-то)
	to prevent sb from doing it (предотвращать, не допускать)
	to stop sb from buying it (останавливать, не давать)

7. Think of situations when you can complain of something, dream of something or blame somebody for something, when you should apologize for something or prevent somebody from doing something. Make up sentences with these verbs.

- 1) to complain of/about
- 2) to dream of/about
- 3) to apologize (forgive) for

- 4) (not) to blame smb for
- 5) to prevent smb from

the music playing loudly
the children being late
having a bad cold
going to the Black Sea
becoming an actress (actor)
getting education in England
being late
forgetting one's birthday

leaving the party late
coming back soon
arriving late
buying cheap tickets
falling asleep
planting apple trees
going to the theatre

1 Say what these people are doing.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.

Do It on Your Own

Match the names of sciences with their explanations.

- 1) biology
- 2) astronomy
- 3) physics
- 4) statistics
- 5) linguistics
- 6) acoustics
- 7) mathematics
- 8) geology
- 9) meteorology
- 10) geography

- a) the study of numbers and of the structure and measurement of shapes
- b) the science that studies natural forces, such as heat, movement, etc.
- c) the study of sound
- d) the scientific study of weather
- e) the study of the Earth's surface regions of the world
- f) the science of using numbers to represent facts
- g) the scientific study of the Earth, its structure, the way in which it was formed, and how it has changed over time
- h) the study of living things
- i) the study of languages, their structure, grammar, history, etc.
- j) the study of the Sun, Moon, planets, stars

Complete the sentences. Make them true.

- 1) When I meet my friends, we usually talk about ...
- 2) I never forget to thank my parents for ...
- 3) I've been thinking of ... for a rather long time.
- 4) I've never dreamt of ... in my life.
- 5) My ... often complains of ...
- 6) Once I tried to stop my friend from ...
- 7) I don't often complain of ...
- 8) Nobody can keep me from ...
- 9) I'll never forget how once I had to apologize for ...
- 10) Only ... can keep me from ...

1. to represent [rɪˈprez(ə)nt] — 2. to represent

3. to think of

Section Two

Do It Together

1 Listen to the text about Francis Bacon, (38), and say which of the statements below are true and which are false.

- 1) Francis Bacon was interested only in one thing — philosophy.
- 2) The English monarch of the time knew about Bacon's work.
- 3) Bacon was a great scientist.
- 4) Bacon's teaching showed scientists that they should rely on observation¹.
- 5) Bacon was called the father of modern science by two 17th century philosophers.
- 6) Sir Isaac Newton was Francis Bacon's teacher.
- 7) Bacon used his method of observation himself making different experiments.
- 8) Bacon died at the age of 65.



2 Say whose names are connected with these:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a) telephone | f) electromagnetic induction |
| b) radio | g) theory of relativity ² |
| c) television | h) conditional ³ reflexes |
| d) table of chemical elements | e) radium |
| i) X-ray | |



1. Dmitri Mendeleev



2. Ivan Pavlov



3. Alexander Popov

¹ to rely on observation — опираться на наблюдения

² relativity [rɪlʌtɪvɪti] — относительность

³ conditional — условный



4. Albert Einstein



5. Alexander Bell



6. Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen



7. Marie Curie



8. John Logie Baird



9. Michael Faraday



Focus on Grammar

Заполните еще несколько таблиц и структур с предлогами, после которых используются так называемые "ing-forms".

to	to succeed in learning English (успешно <i>а</i> чему-либо)
	to participate in discussing the problem (участвовать <i>а</i> чем-либо)
	to be interested in studying sciences (интересоваться чем-либо)
of	to be capable of acting on the stage (быть <i>а</i> состоянии, быть способным <i>а</i> чему-либо)
	to be guilty (guilty) of lying (быть виноватым)
	to be tired of reading (быть усталым от чего-либо)
to	to look forward to seeing Paris (с нетерпением ждать чего-либо)
	to object to voting being (отказаться от того, чтобы что-либо)
	to be used to getting up early (привыкнуть <i>а</i> чему-либо)

3 Express the same in Russian.

1) My family are used to eating Chinese food. 2) I'm looking forward to travelling about the Far East. 3) My mother objects to my coming home late at night. 4) My elder sister objects to spending a lot of money on clothes. 5) My brother is interested in joining your club. 6) My father is used to reading newspapers at breakfast. 7) The children were looking forward to visiting the British Museum. 8) I object to your watching television so late at night. 9) John succeeded in getting only excellent marks in physics. 10) Students are capable of learning long English texts by heart.

4 Which prepositions — *in, of, to* — would you use to complete the sentences?

1) The students of my class are used ... writing articles. 2) We are tired ... doing so many exercises in mathematics. 3) My brother has always been interested ... collecting badges. 4) I object ... your using my computer without asking me first. 5) Would you like to participate ... making our school magazine? 6) We all were looking forward ... meeting our mother at the railway station. 7) Our school football team succeeded ... winning the final match. 8) I am used ... having tea without sugar. 9) My friend is capable ... running very fast. 10) My parents object ... my playing football in the garden.

5 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [29], and repeat

A.

tool [tu:l] — инструмент
human ['hju:mən] — 1) *adj* человеческий, присущий человеку; 2) *n* человек, человеческое существо
produce ['prɒdʒu:] — производить, изготавливать
improve [im'pru:] — улучшать
lead [li:d], led, led — вести, приводить (*к чему-то*)
device [d'vʌs] — приспособление

weapon ['weɪpən] — оружие
crop [krɒp] — 1) *n* урожай, растение; 2) *у* урожай
skill [skɪl] — умение, мастерство
engineer [ˌendʒi'niə] — инженер
invention [ɪn'venʃən] — изобретение
trade [treɪd] — торговля
use [u:] *n* — использование, применение

B.

tool (*n*): primitive tools, garden tools, basic tools. You use tools to do a particular job. A good memory is a useful tool for learning.

human: 1) (*adj*) a human society, a human voice; 2) (*n*) every man, woman, and child is a human (or: a human being).

produce (*v*): to produce tools, to produce cars, to produce food. A cow produces milk.

improve (*v*): to improve one's marks, to improve the results. I'm taking lessons to improve my singing.

lead (*led*, *led*) (*v*): to lead the man down the street, to lead the children into the garden, to lead a busy life. The road leads to the village. She led them down the mountains.

device (*n*): a modern device, an expensive device. A clock is a device that shows the time.

weapon (*n*): a powerful weapon, atomic weapons, biological weapons. The boys used stones as weapons.

crop (*n*) (*often plural*): 1) a widely grown crop, to ruin the crops; 2) a record crop of apples, this year's crop. Wheat is a widely grown crop in Britain and North America. We've had the biggest tomato crop this year.

skill (*n*): to have some skill in financial planning, to have no skill in sth. You show great skill in playing the piano. My friend works with children who have poor reading skills.

engineer (*n*): a chief engineer; a successful engineer. Mr Carr has been an engineer of this company for many years.

invention (*n*): a useful invention, an important invention. Such inventions as the telephone and the computer have changed our way of life.

trade (*n*): domestic trade, foreign trade, world trade, to develop one's trade; to work in the tourist trade. It has been a bad year for the trade between our countries. Steps were taken to develop the trade in fruit and vegetables with Spain.

use (*n*): to be in use, to have some use, there is no use doing sth. These devices are mainly for home use. Guests have free use of the hotel swimming-bath.

6 Say what they are, using the new words.

1) A man, woman or child, not an animal; 2) a plant grown by a farmer; 3) something that is used in fighting; 4) the business of buying and selling goods; 5) a simple instrument that is held in the

hand; 6) the ability to do something well; 7) someone who designs [d'zajnz] and builds such things as roads, bridges, railways, machines; 8) a machine that does something to make one's work easier (for example, a dishwasher, a microwave); 9) a machine, tool, or system that someone has made for the first time; 10) the act or way of using something.

7 Complete the text with the new words.

Jethro Tull was an 18th century a. (1), who first designed the new drill¹ in 1730. His i. (2) was very important as it helped to i.³ farming. Thanks to such agricultural machinery e. (4), production rose fast. The a. (5) and cleverness of such people as Tull p. (6) a lot on new t. (7), machines, and d. (8). Their a. (9) made it possible for England and other countries to t. (10) in grain² and other e. (11) and become richer. But new machines could be operated by fewer men and farm workers lost their jobs. Naturally, it made them angry, so in some parts of the country they even used w. (12) to make farmers destroy the new machines and in some other areas it i. (13) to mass emigration. Even if the agricultural revolution was progressive, it made a lot of p. (14) suffer.



Focus on Vocabulary

Обратите внимание не то, что слово **use** (использовать) и существительное **use** (использование), хотя и пишутся одинаково, имеют различное произношение: to use [ju:z] — use [ju:s].

Грамм.: 1) The phone is in constant use [ju:s]. This room is now ready for use [ju:s]. 2) Candidates are not allowed to use [ju:s] dictionaries at the exam. I am used [ju:zd] to getting up late.

8 Read the sentences aloud. Mind the way you pronounce use. Check your pronunciation. (40)

1) The tennis court is sometimes used as a car park. 2) How can we use this device? 3) Don't throw that box away. I'm sure I can put it to some use. 4) He made full use of his journey. 5) Byrd

¹ a new drill — новая

² grain [gra:n] — зерно

that expensive dress was not the best use of our money. 6) We are all used to cold winters. 7) This phone number is only for use when I'm not in the office. 8) What textbooks do you use to teach English Grammar? 9) My family are used to living in the country in summer. 10) Can we use the verb to be in this sentence?



Did You Know That...?

The Stone Age is the earliest period of human history when tools were made from stone. The old part of the Stone Age is called the *palaeolithic* period. The *neolithic* period, or late Stone Age began around 10,000 years ago, when humans began to plant crops and keep farm animals. The Stone Age was followed by the Bronze Age, which began in some parts of the world in about 5,000 BC, but in other parts of the world Stone Age societies continued until the 19th century.

The Iron Age is the time about 3,000 years ago when iron was used for making tools, weapons, etc. It was a more developed period than the Bronze Age before it.

9 A. Read the text and answer the questions after it.

History of Technology

Part I

The history of technology begins with the use of the stone tools by the earliest humans.

The Old Stone Age, which began about 2.5 million years ago, produced stone tools, the use of fire, spears, the bow and arrow and simple oil lamps.

The New Stone Age, which began about 9,000 BC, saw early farming, the use of the digging stick and the wood hoe. The stone tools



spear



bow and arrow



oil lamp



digging stick



wood hoe



stone axe



cloth



baskets



chariot



fleet

were improved and stone axes began to be used for cutting down trees. Neolithic people learned to make pots, cloth, baskets, bull houses and use early boats.

The Bronze Age beginning about 4,000 BC gave birth to agricultural civilization. The use of copper¹ and bronze led to a lot of new techniques and devices. That was the time when trade first appeared. Copper and bronze hand weapons came into use as well as horse drawn war chariots². Building technology also developed fast during the Bronze Age. That was the time when people began building pyramids, which still impress us. While constructing pyramids Bronze Age builders solved some of the most difficult problems of construction technologies. They also knew how to irrigate their lands to get good crops.

The Iron Age, which began about 2,000 BC was a new technical era [эра]. First of all iron started to be used in making weapons. Bronze and iron weapons gave Greece its military power. The

¹ copper ['kɒpə] — металл

² horse-drawn war chariots ['tʃɑːrɪts] — конные боевые колесницы



column



arch



waterwheel



aqueduct



plough

Greeks built a large fleet, which they used for trading and for fighting in their wars. Greek builders used stone to produce their noble structures with massive columns.

The skill of Roman engineers is legendary. They learned to build stone arches, domes and aqueducts. Roman engineers constructed the waterwheel to use its power. Even more important was the invention of a heavy plough. This new plough helped the civilization of northern Europe to develop.

- 1) What four eras in people's history are mentioned in the text?
- 2) What were the most important inventions of each era?
- 3) Which of the things mentioned in the text were new to you?

4. Listen to the text, [аудио] (41), and learn to read it aloud.

15. History and technology are international words which you can find in many languages. What other international words can you see in the text (ex. 3)? What do they mean?

11 Match the inventions and technologies with the ages when they appeared.

The Old Stone Age
The New Stone Age

The Bronze Age
The Iron Age



bow and arrow



the waterwheel



cloth



arch



aqueduct of stone



stone axe



wood hole



plough



irrigation



digging stick



pyramids



spear



pot



use of fire



first houses and boats

12 Speak about one of these periods: the Old Stone Age, the New Stone Age, the Bronze Age, the Iron Age.

Do It on Your Own

13 Write it in English.

A. 1) Улучшить проанашивание; 2) важное изобретение; 3) вести и железнодорожному козлы; 4) усовершенствовать мастерство ученика; 5) полезная культура (сельскохозяйственная); 6) торговля между странами; 7) опасное оружие; 8) улучшить нашу жизнь; 9) производить полезные инструменты и приспособления; 10) умение читать и писать.

B. 1) У тебя есть какие-нибудь садовые инструменты? 2) Полуавтоматическая машина — очень полезное изобретение. 3) Куда ведет эта дорога? 4) Где было впервые произведено ядерное (nuclear) оружие — в Европе или США? 5) Сью решила улучшить свои оценки по литературе. 6) У Динки насыщенный событиями отпуск. (Динка идет...) 7) Сергей — инженер. Он обладает многими практическими и техническими навыками. 8) Я ничего не знаю об этой культуре. Знаю лишь, что ее пытаются выращивать на севере. 9) Бесплатно выращивать цветы на этой земле. Она очень плохая. 10) Торговля помогает улучшить контакты между странами.

14 Write about yourself. What is that you

- 1) never (seldom, often, always) object to
- 2) like to participate in

- 3) are never guilty of
- 4) are (not) used to
- 5) are (not) capable of doing
- 6) usually get tired of
- 7) will never (would like to) participate in
- 8) are really interested in
- 9) look forward to

Section Three

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the tape, (42), and match the short texts about different tools and devices with the pictures.

Tools and Devices

Tools we use in the garden



Tools we use in the factory



Devices we use at home



- 2 Use the right preposition to complete the sentences — about, of, to, in, for, from.

1) I apologise ... being so late. 2) Ronald is used ... working with different tools. 3) We are tired ... washing up ourselves. Can't we buy a dishwasher? 4) My little brother is capable ... running very fast. 5) We all dream ... taking part in the coming dancing competition. 6) I'm sure the children are looking forward ... their travelling to the sea. 7) The noise in the next room prevented me ... learning the poem by heart. 8) I'm really happy that the school team succeeded ... winning the competition. 9) The neighbour blamed the boys ... breaking the window in his cottage. 10) The tourists thanked their guide ... helping them to do the sights of the city.

- 3 Answer the questions.

1) What devices and tools made the human lives easier? 2) What do you think of being an engineer in future? 3) What in your opinion are the most important inventions from pre-historic times to nowadays? 4) What kind of weapons are the most dangerous nowadays? 5) Which skills do you think are very important for learning English? 6) With what countries should Russia de-

velop trade? 7) Are you or any of your friends (relatives) fond of gardening? What crops can you find in their gardens? 8) What's the use of such devices as the hair dryer, washing machine, dishwasher? 9) What kind of life do you and your friends lead: easy, hard, interesting, busy? Why do you think so? 10) What goods are produced in the place where you live?

- 4 You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A	B	A	B
human	humanity	lead	leader
human	humane	skill	skillful
trade	trader	engineer	engineering
produce	production	invention	inventor
improve	improvement	destroy	destruction

- 1) Keeping our air and water clean will help people, all humanity.
 2) Doctor Albert Hill helped many sick people, even if they couldn't pay. The villagers called him the humane doctor.
 3) A trader is a person who buys and sells things. There are street traders and market traders.
 4) The production of steel is an important industry of such Russian cities as Lipetsk and Chelyabinsk.
 5) A balanced diet and exercise will lead to improvement of your health.
 6) My friend is the leader of our school orchestra.
 7) The Roman builders were very skillful. They could build beautiful domes and arches.
 8) Engineering is the work that uses scientific information for practical things, such as building bridges, producing plastics, etc.
 9) Do you know who the inventor of tele vision was?
 10) Bacteriological weapons are modern weapons of mass destruction.



Focus on Grammar

1. В английском языке определенный артикль (**the**) часто используется с существительными в единственном числе для того, чтобы обозначить какой-либо класс предметов или животных в противоположность другим классам. Например:

The elephant is a big strong animal that lives in Africa and India.
 The thermometer has been used by people for many centuries.

2. Определенный артикль (**a/an**) с существительными в единственном числе, в свою очередь, используется для обозначения представителей класса предметов или животных. Например:

A fox is a common animal in many parts of the world.

A barometer is a useful thing to have at home.

3. Множественное число существительных в этом случае означает всех представителей такого класса. Тогда употребляется нулевой артикль.

Crocodiles can be dangerous.

Can fire first appeared in the 19th century.

4. Англическое слово **man** (человеческое существо или мужчина) и **woman** употребляются в единственном числе и с нулевым артиклем, если используются для обозначения целого класса людей.

Man is a part of the natural world.

What is the role of woman in the modern world?

Example: Don't cry, be a man! A woman in love always looks beautiful. Здесь **man** и **woman** обозначают мужчину и женщину как представителей класса.

- 5 Use the right article (**a, the, --**) to complete the sentences. In some sentences both are possible.

- 1) ... computer has greatly changed the life of people. 2) I have always believed in goodness of ... men. 3) ... dinosaurs lived very long time ago and are now extinct. 4) ... rabbits make very good pets. 5) ... windmill uses the power of the wind to do different kinds of work. 6) ... wolf seldom lives alone. 7) ... bluebird is a small songbird of North America. 8) Some people still think that ... woman's place is at home. 9) ... column is usually used to support the roof of a building. 10) ... comet often looks like a bright star. 11) ... honeybees make and store honey. 12) ... helmet¹ should be worn when you ride a motorcycle or a bike.

- 6 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape. (43), and repeat

A.

enable /'neɪbəl/ — давать возможность, делать возможным

explore /ɪk'splɔː/ — исследовать

¹ a helmet /'helɪt/ — шлем

iron ['aɪən] — 1) железо;
2) утюг
need [niːd] — нужда, потребность
train [treɪn] — готовить, тренировать
achievement [ə'ʃi:vment] — достижение
knowledge ['nɒlɪʃ] — знание
argue ['ɑ:gju:] — спорить, возражать

B.

explore (v): to explore the planet, to explore a new country.
Astronauts [æ'strɒnɒts] explored the Moon to learn what it is like.

iron (n): 1) Iron is a grey-white metal and a chemical element.
2) We use irons to press trousers and shirts.

need (n): a special need for sth, a strong need for sth/sth. There is a real need for nurses in this hospital. They say there is a trying need for skilled workers.

engine (n): a big engine, a powerful engine, a diesel ['di:zl] engine, a four cylinder engine. The engine of a car gives the power that moves the car.

train (v): to train engineers, to train sportsmen, to train hard. The boys are training hard for the big match.

achievement (n): important achievements, great achievements, the main achievement, an achievement in some science. She was offered a place at Cambridge University which is a real achievement.

knowledge (n): to have some (no) knowledge of sth. I have some knowledge of the subject, I can explain your mistake. My teacher's comments helped to improve my knowledge of Physics.

argue (v): to argue with sb, to argue about sth, to argue for or against sth. Alice always argues with her mother. I argued against going to the beach because it looked like raining.

create (v): to create a character in a novel, to create a problem, to create the world. How do I create a new file?

create [kri'eɪt] — создавать
engine ['endʒɪn] — двигатель, мотор
opportunity [əpə'tju:nɪti] — возможность
give a rise to sth — послужить началом, дать толчок
on the one hand, on the other hand — с одной стороны, с другой стороны

opportunity (n): a wonderful opportunity, to have an opportunity to do sth, to take the opportunity to do sth. I'd like to take the opportunity to thank all of you for coming.

give rise to sth: Such behaviour can give rise to other problems.
on the one hand: On the one hand mobile telephones are very useful but on the other hand they can be dangerous.

5 Which is the odd word out?

- 1) enable, create, train, engine, argue, need
- 2) achievement, opportunity, create, knowledge, iron
- 3) iron, dishwasher, toaster, hair dryer, knowledge
- 4) disappear, reveal, irregular, engine, enable
- 5) discover, explore, enable, argue, create
- 6) iron, engine, opportunity, train, bacon, son
- 7) argue, enable, achievement, alphabet, advertisement



Focus on Vocabulary

to invent <i>to create something new</i>	to discover <i>to find something that already existed but was not known about before</i>
1) Trains were invented before cars.	1) Galileo discovered the planet Jupiter ['dʒu:pɪtɪ].
2) People began to invent tools very early in their history.	2) Columbus [kə'lʌmbʌs] discovered America in 1492.
3) Was the time machine ever invented?	3) When did you discover that you'd made a mistake?

6 Invent or discover? Complete the sentences.

- 1) I'd like to know who ... the mobile phone.
- 2) Many years ago they ... iron in this place.
- 3) Penicillin was ... by Alexander Fleming.
- 4) When was the atom ...?
- 5) All through their history people ... new and new weapons.
- 6) Australia was ... for Europeans by James Cook.
- 7) In what country was money first ...?
- 8) I've recently ... that my home town has a very interesting history.
- 9) Alexander Graham Bell ... the telephone in 1876.
- 10) He ... the truth about his birth only when he was a grown-up man.

4. Read the text and name some pros and cons of technological progress.

History of Technology

Part II



In the Middle Ages in Europe the watermills and windmills brought a revolution to the production of power. The new technologies enabled people to construct wonderful cathedrals — the best example of Gothic architecture [ˈɡɒtɪkɪfə]. During the 14th century guns appeared in Europe.

From the 15th to the 17th century the period of Renaissance [rɪˈnæsəns] spread in Europe. The New

World was discovered and explored. The printed books helped the development of European cultural life. The Renaissance saw a new interest in technology, and the new technology led to new problems. One problem was that ship-building and iron industry needed a lot of wood and Europe soon lost its forests. Another problem was the need in more powerful engines.

The 18th century in Europe was the time of the Industrial Revolution, the time when technology developed very fast. In 1712 Thomas Newcomen, an Englishman, invented the steam engine. In the 1760s, James Watt improved the Newcomen engine, which opened the way to constructing steamboat and locomotives in the early 19th century.



The Industrial Revolution gave rise to the engineering profession. More and more universities began to train engineers.

During the 19th and 20th centuries people's lives have greatly changed thanks to science and technology.

Achievements in transportation, communications and use of energy have had a great influence on the modern society. Medical knowledge has given people longer and healthier lives. Computers are giving us new opportunities at work and at home. Now people have better living standards and much more free time.



On the other hand, a lot of people may argue that such great technological achievements do not come without a price. New technology has led to creating weapons of mass destruction; new communication technology and spread of information have brought with them less privacy; the great use and abuse of natural resources is now damaging the environment; the great intensity of human life leads to stresses and makes us question the advantages of high technology.



5. Listen to the same text, (44), and learn to read it aloud.



Did You Know That...

The Middle Ages. In Western Europe the Middle Ages were a time (between AD 500—1500) when church was very important. The Roman Catholic Church had great influence on people's lives and on the way society was organized (structured). It was also the period when most cathedrals (large important churches) were built. The only people who could read and write were rich and powerful people and monks (nuns). The Middle Ages were also a time of many plagues (pests). Sometimes they say that the Middle Ages began in about AD 500, after the end of the Roman Empire, but this period is usually called the "Dark Ages" or the "Early Middle Ages".

The Renaissance is the period in Europe from about 1400 to about 1600, when the art, literature, and ideas of the ancient world (Ancient Greece, especially) began to be studied again. The Renaissance influenced most of Western Europe, but it is connected especially with Italy and the famous artists of this period — Leonardo da Vinci, Michelangelo and Raphael. The beginning of the Renaissance led to the end of the period called the "Middle Ages".

6. Read the text "History of Technology" again and find in it the English equivalents for the following:

- 1) производство энергии
- 2) готическая архитектура
- 3) Новый Свет (Америка)
- 4) эпоха Ренессанса
- 5) строительство и черная металлургия
- 6) в начале XIX века
- 7) благодаря науке и технике
- 8) транспорт, связь и использование энергии

- 9) более высокий жизненный уровень
 10) за такие технологические достижения необходимо платить
 11) оружие массового уничтожения
 12) природные ресурсы
 13) заставляет нас сомневаться в преимуществах высоких технологий

11 Give it a name.

- 1) The period in European history between about AD 1100 and 1500.
 2) A mill that is driven by moving water, usually a river.
 3) An important Christian church, usually very large and beautifully decorated.
 4) A weapon from which bullets/or shells are fired through a metal tube.
 5) The period in European history from about 1400 to about 1600.
 6) Designing and constructing ships.
 7) A period of time when machines are invented and a lot of factories built.
 8) An engine powered by steam, often in a train.
 9) Something successfully finished or done often with the help of skill and hard work.
 10) Different ways of travelling and sending information between places.
 11) A sum of money for which a thing is sold or bought.
 12) Unhappiness as the result of problems of living, too much work, etc.
 13) The use of the most modern and best machines and methods usually in business and industry.

12 Answer the questions on the text "History of Technology" (part 10).

- 1) What periods in the history of humanity are mentioned in the text? What do you know about them?
 2) How did people produce power through their history? What did they use?
 3) Why did Europe lose its forests?
 4) Why was the engine invention very important?
 5) How has the human society changed thanks to the achievements in technology?

- 6) What are the negative results of the technological revolution? Can people improve the situation? How?

7 Speak about the history of technology. Mention the following periods:

- technology in the Middle Ages
- technology during the period of the Renaissance
- the Industrial Revolution in Europe

Do It on Your Own

1 Insert prepositions where necessary.

- A. 1) There is a strong need ... a good computer in the office.
 2) My knowledge ... ancient history is rather poor. 3) ... the one hand, it is a very difficult problem, ... the other hand, it is very interesting. 4) Achievements ... transportation, communications and use of energy have had a great influence ... the modern society. 5) New technology has led ... creating weapons ... mass destruction. 6) Delays could give rise ... further problems. 7) We all are training hard ... the coming competitions. 8) Tomorrow we can begin exploring ... this charming corner of Italy.

- B. 1) We apologized ... our friends ... our leaving the project. 2) His words prevented us ... coming. 3) We are looking forward ... meeting you all again, next summer. 4) I blamed my cousin ... telling lies. 5) Aren't you tired ... repeating this again and again? 6) Jane succeeded ... writing compositions really well. 7) I think Bob is dreaming ... flying to Russia. 8) I am used ... doing morning exercises. 9) We would like to thank you all ... helping our children. 10) Are you capable ... working on the computer now?

13 Make up and write the names of these devices. Use the words from the two boxes.



1.



2.



3.



4.



6.



8.



7.



9.



5.



10.



11.

Example: vacuum

Box I	Box II
cup, saucer, micro, frying, food, dish, alarm, hair, coffee, CD, washing	wave, clock, player, pan, mixer, pan, dryer, washer, maker, machine, board

Section Four

Do It Together

- 1 Read the text, then listen to it, (42) (45), and say what is missing in the written text.

Lev Landau

Lev Davidovich Landau was born on January 22, 1908. His name is widely known in the world of science. Lev Landau worked in such fields as low-temperature physics, atomic and nuclear physics, and some others. He was awarded the Nobel prize for Physics. Landau's parents were science-oriented people. At the age of 13 the boy finished the gymnasium and went to the Baku Technical School.



Landau got his first chance to go abroad in 1929. He had short stays in Göttingen and Munich, Germany and went to Copenhagen to work in Niels Bohr's Institute for Theoretical Physics. Almost all the leading theoretical physicists in the 1920s and 1930s spent some time at this institute. Landau was greatly influenced by Bohr's example. During his stay in Copenhagen, Lev Landau visited the science laboratories in Cambridge and Zurich before his returning to the Soviet Union in 1937.

- 2 You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A	B	A	B
discover explore train	discoverer exploration trainer	achievement argue create	achieve argument creative, creator, creation

- 1) Fleming was the discoverer of penicillin. 2) Dr. David Livingstone made his journey of exploration of Africa in the 19th century. 3) A person, who trains people or animals for sports, work, etc. is called a trainer. 4) Marie and Pierre Curie achieved great success as scientists. 5) We had a long argument about where to go for our holiday. 6) Walt Disney was the creator of Donald Duck. 7) Mickey Mouse was also the creation of Walt Disney. 8) Walt Disney was a very creative person.

- 3 Read the texts about some well-known inventions and match them with their names.

Inventions

- a) It is an instrument used to collect light from an object, to bring the light to focus and produce an image, and make that image look larger. There are three kinds of these devices: refractors, which use lenses, refractors, which use mirrors¹ and those which use a combination of lenses and mirrors.
b) It is a device that generates "well organized" light. The mechanism uses a process known as stimulated emission. It generates electromagnetic radiation in a special microwave region. Nowadays these devices are widely used in different ways, among

¹ a mirror ['mɪrə] — зеркала



1) the clock



2) the turning lathe



3) the computer



4) the laser



5) the optical telescope

which is medicine. This device is often used to make quick and painless operations.

c) It is a machine tool that takes away unwanted material from a work piece by rotating¹ it against a cutting tool. It is the oldest and probably the most important machine tool. Early wood-turning tools powered by foot, were used in the Middle Ages. Modern models work at a very high speed and have a lot of functions.

d) This device is based on a microprocessor, a small chip that performs the operation of a central processing unit. The early kinds of these machines had a rather small memory, typically in the 16–64 kilobyte range. Modern models have memories in the megabyte to gigabyte which is a great improvement.

¹ rotating [rə'teɪnɪŋ] — вращение

e) This is a mechanical, electrical or atomic device that measures the passage of time. Mechanical models date from the late Middle Ages. All mechanical models must have a source of energy — for example a falling weight or a wound spring. All such models must be carefully regulated to make them run accurately. The energy turns a system of wheels that move the hands.

4 Read the text and answer the questions after it.

Piano in the Pocket

Do you play the piano? The problems with pianos is they're big and heavy. Now there is the Hand Roll¹ Piano from Japan. It rolls up very small. You can play the piano in the park or in the car. The piano costs £70 (104 Euros) in Japan.

1) Would you like to have such a piano? Why? Why not?

2) Do you think it's a good idea to play the piano in the park or in the car? Where else could you take such a piano?

3) What stimulates inventors to make new devices for modern consumers? What stimulated them earlier in history?

4) Some people think that modern man has become lazy and spoiled by all the new machinery doing everything for him. What do you think?



5 Make two lists of 5 most important and 5 least important inventions. Compare your lists with your classmates'. Explain your choice.



Focus on Grammar

The infinitive

В английском языке инфинитив, или неопределённая форма глагола (Verb), может употребляться в предложениях после глагола (V), имен существительных (N) и имен прилагательных (Adj).

1. V + Vto

I want to go home at once.

We decided to explore the new city.

1. to roll — кататься (в автомобиле)
2. to assess — оценивать

Инфинитив часто используется после следующих глаголов:

agree, forget, manage (справиться, сделать что-то), **refuse** (отказаться), **learn, afford** (позволять себе), **promise** (обещать), **hope, offer** (предложить).

Обрати внимание, как строятся в этом случае отрицательные предложения.

We promised not to be late.
He agreed not to come home late.

2. N + Vto

This is the film to see. (Вот фильм, который надо посмотреть.)
She didn't know about his wish to leave. (Она не знала о его желании уехать.)

He read the article to get more facts. (Он прочитал статью, чтобы получить больше фактов.)

Следует обратить внимание на порядок подробных предложений на русском языке.

Часто именное существительному предшествуют порядковые числительные (*the first, the second, the third, etc.*), а также прилагательные (*best, new, best, worst*).

Who was the first man to fly into space? (Кто был первым человеком, полетевшим в космос?)

John will be the last person to know it. (Джон будет последним, кто узнает об этом.)

It was the best dictionary to buy. (Это был лучший словарь, который можно было купить.)

3. Adj + V

His accent is difficult to understand.
This book is easy to read.

Обрати внимание, что прилагательные с инфинитивом могут быть вставлены в разные предложения с одинаковым смыслом.

It is difficult to understand him. (Ему трудно понять.)
He is difficult to understand.

5. Complete the sentences with the right verbs.

agree, refuse, promise, forget, learn, hope, manage, afford, offer

1) If Dan has ... to come, he will certainly be at the party. He always keeps his word.

- 2) Don't ... to call granny and say happy birthday to her.
- 3) I have just bought a television, that's why I can't ... to buy a new camera.
- 4) Jane ... to rollerskate very early, at the age of four.
- 5) Michael was so kind, he ... to help me with my mathematics.
- 6) I didn't want to go to the shops, but ... to do it because I wanted to help mum.
- 7) How did you ... to dig the garden alone? It is such hard work.
- 8) If Margaret invites you to the theatre, don't ... to go with her, she is so lonely.
- 9) "War and Peace" is a very long novel but I ... to complete it this week and start reading "Anna Karenina".

4. Complete the sentences using the words from the box.

Example: I watched the film because someone told me ...
I watched the film because someone told me that it was a good film to watch.

uncomfortable, interesting, exciting, good, safe, easy, fashionable, the best, useful, cheap, enjoyable

- 1) We played this new game because someone told us ...
- 2) The Greens stayed in the Central Hotel because someone ...
- 3) The travellers decided to visit Novosibirsk because ...
- 4) Emma took the job because ...
- 5) I chose that bank because someone ...
- 6) Peter is reading Stephen King because someone told ...
- 7) My parents chose this school for me because ...
- 8) They bought this computer because ...
- 9) Mrs Benton is growing pansies because someone ...
- 10) Uncle James bought a BMW because someone told him ...
- 11) Kate is learning Danish because ...
- 12) Ian is taking this new medicine ...

5. Little Tom never agrees with his elder brother Jack. Read what Jack says and express Tom's arguments using Vto as in the example.

Example: Jack: Tom, why are you so late? You said you would come home at seven.
Tom: promise/No, he late.
Tom: No, I didn't. I just promised not to be late.



1) J a c k: Tom, you haven't done your room yet! And you agreed to do it yesterday.

T o m: agree/to make the room messy

2) J a c k: Tom, why haven't you finished your lessons yet? You planned to be free at four!

T o m: plan/to work on the computer in the evening

3) J a c k: Tom, you haven't been to the shops yet. And you promised to do it.

T o m: promise/not to leave the family without bread

4) J a c k: Oh, I see, Tom. How good of you. You have decided to prepare lunch.

T o m: decide/to ask you to do it

5) J a c k: Tom, I can't believe my eyes. You're writing an essay instead of watching a horror film in the cinema as you planned to do.

T o m: plan/to stay at home this evening

6) J a c k: Tom, my bike is broken and you promised not to touch it.

T o m: promise/not to ride your bike

7) J a c k: Tom, you don't know the poem and you agreed to recite it at the school party.

T o m: agree/to play the guitar and sing my song

8) J a c k: Tom, where is the money? You promised not to spend it on little things.

T o m: promise/to spend the money on CDs.

Look at the pictures and say why these people did what they did.

E x a m p l e: Mr Keating/come/buy — Mr Keating came to the pet shop to buy a kitten for his little daughter.



1) Ben Johnson/grow/get



2) James/go/learn



3) Patrick/buy/give



4) The tourists/arrive/have a look



5) The young people/come/get married



6) The teenagers/gather/dance



7) Donald/stop/paint



8) Mrs Morrison/invite/please

Imagine that you have a million roubles. Say what things you can afford to do.

E x a m p l e: I can afford to travel around the world.

Do it on Your Own

90 Paraphrase these sentences as in the example.

Example: It is impossible to read your essay.
Your essay is impossible to read.

- 1) It is difficult to improve this device.
- 2) It is easy to destroy a sandcastle.
- 3) It is hard to learn Chinese.
- 4) It is interesting to invent new tools.
- 5) It is not safe to drink this water.
- 6) It was exciting to watch that football match.
- 7) It was difficult to follow his plan.
- 8) It was easy to find my friend's cottage.
- 9) It was hard to find a five-star hotel on the coast.
- 10) It was impossible to believe his words.

91 Consult dictionaries or the Internet and answer the questions.

- 1) Who was the first man to fly into space?
- 2) Who was the second man to travel into space?
- 3) Who was the first woman to fly into space?
- 4) Who was the first man to walk in space?
- 5) Who was the first astronaut to walk on the Moon?
- 6) Who were the first people to fly a plane?
- 7) Who was the first person to invent the radio?
- 8) Who was the first person to invent the telephone?
- 9) Who was the first scientist to discover radium?
- 10) Who were the first explorers to discover Antarctica?
- 11) Who was the first person to reach the South Pole?
- 12) Who was the first person to sail all around the world?

92 Express the same in Russian.

- 1) These tools are easy to use at home. 2) James was the last person to arrive at the party. 3) John is easy to please. 4) Harry is impossible to argue with. 5) The pie is hot to eat it. 6) The athlete is strong to run the race. 7) The film was boring to watch and we left the cinema. 8) The water was cold to bathe. 9) The flowers were beautiful to look at. 10) Mr Smith is old to drive a car.

¹ Antarctica — the continent which is the most southern area of land on the Earth and is mostly covered with ice.

Section Five

Do It Together

4 Listen to the text about the first woman in space, (46), and say which statements are true, which are false and what facts are not mentioned in the text.



Valentina Tereshkova



Yuriy Gagarin



Valery Bykovsky



Star of a Hero
of the Soviet Union



the Order of Lenin

- 1) Valentina Tereshkova was the first cosmonaut to travel into space.
- 2) Valentina could fly aeroplanes.
- 3) Tereshkova was born in spring.
- 4) She spent her childhood in the place named Maslennikovo.
- 5) She joined Soviet cosmonaut programme in the fifties of the last century.
- 6) Valery Bykovsky and Valentina Tereshkova travelled into space on the same day.

- 7) Valentina left the cosmonaut programme after her marriage.
8) Tereshkova directed the Soviet Women's Committee in 1968 and from 1974 to 1991.



Focus on Vocabulary

Имя существительное **space** в значении «космос, космическое пространство» не употребляется с артиклем.

The Soviet Union was the first country to send a man into space.
People began to explore space many centuries ago.
Who was the first man in space?

2 Complete these sentences with suitable infinitives.

1) Nick promised ... on time and not to be late. 2) Everybody likes it when Mr. Preston gives lectures. He is easy ... 3) Sara knows a lot of facts. She is interesting ... to. 4) They couldn't afford ... that car. It was too expensive. 5) Alice refused to ... the grammar rule to her younger brother. She had done it twice before. 6) The suitcase with books was very heavy but I managed ... it into the house. 7) I decided ... the poppies and pansies in my garden as the soil was very dry. 8) It was very hot outside and the children wanted ... 9) We offered the old man ... his heavy bag with vegetables. 10) I told Jane ... her warm sweater as it was rather cold.



Focus on Grammar

The infinitive

1. Обрати внимание на то, что инфинитив после прилагательных часто употребляется в сочетании с наречиями **enough** (достаточно) и **too** (слишком). Наречий:

He is too young to drive a car.
He is old enough to go there alone.

2. Наречие **enough** также часто употребляется перед существительным, к которому следует инфинитив! Наречий:

He has enough money to spend it as he wants.
Bob had enough information to answer the questions.

1 To too часто распространяется и на те случаи, когда такое сочетание является не следствием инфинитива: I have enough free time. They are late enough.

1 A Too or enough? Which would you use to complete the sentences?

- 1) The tea was ... hot for me to drink and I left it on the table.
2) If it is not warm ... for you in the room, I'll turn on the heater.
3) They are young ... to be able to dance through the night.
4) The kids are ... young to be able to understand such problems.
5) The car is ... small for five people. I'll get home by bus. 6) This umbrella is small ... to keep in the school bag. 7) This football team is good ... to win the final match. 8) Our school team is ... good to lose the basketball game.

A Find the right place for the word enough in the sentences.

- 1) I hope this new jacket will be warm to wear in cold weather.
2) I'm sorry to say I haven't got money to buy souvenirs for all my friends. 3) Have you got chairs for all your visitors? 4) New computers cost a lot of money but old computers are cheap. 5) The food was tasty and we ate practically all of it. 6) The play was interesting for us to watch it to the end. 7) Do you have money for your summer holidays? 8) The man was skilful and soon our house looked as good as new. 9) I don't think that the house is big for fifteen people. 10) Today I have time to talk to my best friend on the phone.



Focus on Vocabulary

Phrasal verb to break

1) to break down — развалиться (обычно о механизмах). The car broke down just outside London.

2) to break in — а) вломаться. Someone had broken in through the bedroom window. б) вмешаться в разговор. "Hilary," he broke in, "I'm just trying to help."

3) to break into — неожиданно начать что-то делать; to break into laughter — расхохотаться, to break into tears — расплакаться, to break into a run — броситься бежать. They looked at each other and broke into laughter.

4) to break out — вспыхнуть, начаться. Last night a fire broke out in the bedroom. World War II broke out in 1939.

5) to break through — пробиться. The sun had finally broken through the clouds.

1 a heater — отопительный прибор

4 Fill in the missing words to complete the sentences.

- 1) The horses broke ... a gallop as soon as they heard the gun abouting.
- 2) Space exploration was a real break ... in science and technology.
- 3) My washing machine was broken ... and I had to wash by hand.
- 4) The storm broke ... at night and in the morning the garden looked terrible.
- 5) What will you do if someone breaks ... your house?
- 6) As soon as we were alone, we closed the door of the room ... we were afraid that somebody would hear us and break ... our talk.
- 7) How did it happen that a fire broke ... in the garage?
- 8) A group of young football fans managed to break ... the police lines and found themselves on the field.

5 Look at the pictures and say why these things happened.



1) The girl broke into a run ...



2) The old man's face broke into a smile ...



3) The child broke into tears ...



4) The young people broke into laughter ...



5) She broke into singing ...



6) Paul broke into a sweat ...



7) The little boy's face broke into a grimace [grɪ'meɪs] ...

6 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [56] (47), and repeat

A.
 flight [flaɪt] — полёт
 (the) universe ['juːnɪvɜːs] — Вселенная
 solar ['səʊlə] — солнечный
 equipment [i'kwɪpmənt] — оборудование
 both [bəʊt] — оба, обе
 generation [dʒenə'reɪʃən] — поколение
 whole [həʊl] — целый

crew [kruː] — команда
 memorable ['memərəbəl] — запоминающийся, памятный
 launch [lɔːntʃ] — запускать (космические корабли, ракеты)
 around [ə'raʊnd] — вокруг, около
 satisfy ['sætɪsfaɪ] — удовлетворять

B.
 flight (n): a flight from Moscow to London, to be on the flight, to delay the flight. My flight has been delayed. The flight from Moscow to Arkhangelsk took about an hour and a half.

(the) universe (n): the whole universe. Do you believe God created the universe? Could there be life like ours somewhere else in the universe?

solar (adj): (the) solar system, solar power, solar energy. The Sun and the group of planets that includes the Earth are our solar system.

equipment (n): camping equipment, safety equipment, a piece of equipment. A computer is the most important piece of equipment you will buy. Pens, pencils and paper are writing equipment.

both (*pron*): both astronauts, both of the astronauts, both (*adj*) my parents, both of us, both of them, in both hands. Both flights are not very long. Both Jill and Jim are fond of travelling. They are both very good pupils.

generation (*n*): the older generation, the younger generation, the generation gap. Three generations live in this house. The older generation doesn't like rock music.

whole (*adj*): the whole class, the whole book, the whole flight, the whole evening. She spent the whole morning training. **On the whole**: Living in town is pleasant but, on the whole, I like the country better.

crew¹ (*n*): a plane crew, a ship crew, a film crew. A crew is a group of people who work together on a ship or aeroplane.

memorable (*adj*): a memorable day, a memorable journey. Our romantic trip to Rome was really memorable.

launch (*v*): to launch a rocket into air, to launch a spaceship, to launch a satellite² into space. A new weather satellite will be launched next month.

around (*prep*): 1) around the world, around the garden. Ann put a gold chain around her neck. Jean's clothes were lying around the room. 2) (*adv*) - about. I'll be there around midday.

satisfy (*vt*): to satisfy one's parents, to satisfy one's teacher. I think John's success will satisfy his parents. It is impossible to satisfy everyone.

2 Match the words and their meanings.

A

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1) generation | a) things needed for some activity |
| 2) memorable | b) a journey through the air or space |
| 3) (the) universe | c) all people of about the same age |
| 4) crew | d) difficult to forget |
| 5) equipment | e) all space and everything in it |
| 6) flight | f) a group of people working together on a ship |
| 7) whole | h) all |

B

¹ The noun *crew* can be followed by a singular or plural verb.

² a satellite ['sætlaɪt] - anyspace

1 Say a few words about the first man's flight into space. Use these:

- 1) compete with the USA in space exploration
- 2) both the countries
- 3) launch rockets into space
- 4) explore the universe
- 5) produce new space equipment
- 6) make the first flight into space
- 7) fly around the Earth in 1 hour 29 minutes
- 8) belong to the first generation of Soviet cosmonauts
- 9) launch the spaceship Vostok 1 into space on April 12, 1961
- 10) memorable event
- 11) be satisfied with the results of the experiment



Focus on Vocabulary

Team (<i>ˈtiːm</i>) <i>a group of people or animals working together</i>	Crew (<i>ˈkruː</i>) <i>a group of people working together usually on a plane or a ship (spaceship)</i>
a team of sportsmen	a plane's crew
a three-man team in the race	a ship's crew
a design team	a tank crew
a project team	a train crew
a team of horses	a camera crew
a management team, etc.	a film crew

Note: The nouns *crew* and *team* can be followed by the verb in the singular or the plural. The crew is/are ready for the flight. The football team have/has won their best.

- 5 Listen to the tape, (48). Repeat the names of the planets¹ and find the right places for them in the picture.

- a) Mercury ['mɜ:kjʊrɪ]
- b) Neptune ['neɪpjʊn]
- c) Earth [ɜ:θ]
- d) Saturn ['sætən]
- e) Mars [mɑ:z]
- f) Venus ['vɛnʊs]
- g) Uranus ['juərənəs]
- h) Jupiter ['dʒʌpɪtə]



- 10 A. Read the text.

Space Exploration

People often think that the age of space exploration began with the first spaceships in the 1950s and 1960s, though in fact, astronomers had been exploring the universe long before the beginning of space flights. Galileo made the first optical telescope used for astronomy in 1609. Later scientists got a lot more information about the solar system and its planets with the help of interplanetary probes², space capsules that carry special equipment and send information back to Earth.

From the beginning of the space age, both the Soviet Union and the United States were active in the exploration of the solar system. Both countries had their own space programmes, competing with each other. Both countries sent their probes to the Moon, to Venus, Mars and, later, to Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. Anyhow a real breakthrough³ in space exploration was the beginning of manned space flights. The first manned flight took place on April 12, 1961, when Yuri Gagarin went into orbit in the Soviet *Vostok 1* spaceship and proved that man could survive in space.

¹ Општане планет — планете, што се движат околу Сонцето

² Interplanetary probes — меѓупланетарни сонди

³ breakthrough — пробој



The second-generation Soviet spaceships *Voskhod* were made for a whole crew of astronauts. In 1965 *Voskhod 2* made a flight which was really memorable because the copilot, Alexei Leonov, left the ship for the first time and became a space walker. He spent 10 minutes outside the spaceship in a special spacesuit.

The Soviet third-generation manned spaceship *Soyuz* was able of manoeuvring [mɔ:ʊvɔ:nɪŋ] and spending almost unlimited time in space. The next stage of space exploration was connected with the use of orbital stations. The first of them called *Mir* was launched in 1990.

At the same time the USA carried on its programme of the Moon exploration and in 1969 Neil Armstrong became the first man to walk on the Moon. In 1975 the USSR and the USA made the first space experiment [sk'epcrment] together.

The future of space exploration seems to be connected with co-operation work in space. People's desire¹ to know more about the world around us will never be satisfied and we can get the best results if we do this hard work together.

K Choose the right item.

- 1) The age of space exploration began ... the first space flights.
a) before b) with c) after
- 2) Interplanetary probes ... information.
a) produce and collect b) collect and transmit c) produce and transmit
- 3) At the beginning the USSR and the USA worked in the field of space exploration ...
a) together
b) individually
c) with the help of other countries
- 4) A manned flight is a flight in which the spaceship is operated by ...
a) people on Earth b) robots c) astronauts
- 5) Leonov's flight was memorable because he was the first man ...
a) to wear a special spacesuit
b) to become a copilot
c) to stay in outer space
- 6) American astronauts reached the Moon ... Russian cosmonauts.
a) before b) together with c) after
- 7) It seems that in the future people of different countries will ... for space exploration.
a) unite b) do more work c) be thanked

¹ desire [dɪ'zəɪə] — a strong wish

L Speak about the history of space exploration. Mention the following:

- 1) space exploration before the beginning of space flights
- 2) unmanned flights into space
- 3) manned flights into space
- 4) competition and cooperation in space exploration

Do It on Your Own

M Choose the right word *crew* or *team* to complete the sentences.

- 1) Our teacher asked us to work on the project Space Exploration. We had a ... of four pupils to work on it. 2) In 1975 the Soviet ... of Soyuz 19 and the US ... of Apollo 18 worked in space together.
- 3) I'm not sure that our school basketball ... will win the game.
- 4) A stewardess is a member of the 5) The ... is waiting for instructions from the captain. 6) John is in the school hockey
- 7) The carriage was drawn by a ... of four white horses. 8) The train ... consisted of fifteen people. 9) Do you know the film ...?
- 10) A television ... was sent to make a documentary on the Olympic Games.

N Express the same in English.

- A. 1) Полет в космос; 2) полет из Парижа в Лондон; 3) спасательное оборудование; 4) оба астронавта; 5) соревноваться в беге (тынах); 6) проблема отцов и детей; 7) отложить полет; 8) запустить ракету в воздух; 9) запоминающееся событие; 10) в целом удовлетворить всех; 11) вся Вселенная.

- B. 1) Первый полет вокруг Земли был совершен Ю. Гагаринем. 2) В футбольной команде 11 игроков. 3) Оба моих родителя удовлетворены моими школьными результатами. 4) Аня стояла и держала вазу двумя руками. 5) Молодое поколение не хуже и не лучше. Оно другое. 6) В целом мне нравится наш проект. 7) Мы провели целый вечер, соревнуясь друг с другом. 8) Деньги — важная дата в нашей истории. 9) Наша Вселенная хранит много тайн. (В нашей Вселенной...)

Section Six. Consolidation Class

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text "Mobile Phones", (49), and complete the sentences below in the right way.



- 1) Doctor Martin Cooper was the father of the ...
 - a) radio phone
 - b) telephone
 - c) cell phone
- 2) A cell phone ... like a radio.
 - a) functions
 - b) looks
 - c) costs
- 3) Car phones of the 1980s were ...
 - a) cheap
 - b) not very cheap
 - c) not cheap at all
- 4) Mobile phones are cheaper than radio phones because ...
 - a) people share the same frequencies¹
 - b) people don't need any special equipment
 - c) people use special channels

¹ frequency ['frɪkwənsi] — частота [частоты, на какой-то определенной длине волны]

- a) one frequency
 - b) two frequencies
 - c) more than two frequencies
- 5) Something that modern mobile phones can not do is ...
 - a) contacting the Internet
 - b) sending and getting messages
 - c) printing

- 6 Working in pairs discuss pros and cons of using mobile phones. You can find some ideas below useful.

Pros (+)	Cons (-)
1) It gives you an opportunity to contact your family and friends at any time you need.	1) Mobile phone calls don't give you a chance to concentrate.
2) It stores ¹ some useful information.	2) Mobiles may be bad for the user's health.
3) It can wake you up in the morning.	3) People sometimes buy them not because they need them but because mobiles have become fashionable.
...	...

- 7 You know the words in column A. Read these words and sentences after them and say what the words in column B mean.

A	B
equipment	equip
memorable	a) memory; b) memories
satisfy	a) satisfaction; b) satisfactory
launch, v	launch, n
whole	wholly

- 1) The ship was equipped with special devices to be used in case of fire. 2) We should equip the football team with new uniforms.

¹ to store [stɔː] — хранить

3) My elder brother has a good memory for facts and dates. 4) The student recited the poem from memory. 5) The trip to Canada was one of their happiest memories. 6) Don't you get a lot of satisfaction from doing your homework well? 7) Your test in maths is more than satisfactory. 8) The launch of the new US space shuttle¹ was successful. 9) I wholly agree with you.

4 Read the text "Going Underground" and say which of the "metros" is mentioned in paragraphs 1-5.

- a) the oldest of them
- b) the most comfortable
- c) the one which carries the biggest number of passengers
- d) the one which shows the style of decoration matching the capital
- e) the one which has the longest lines

Going Underground

In the 1860s London was, quite literally, the capital of the world. The city was growing, and as its population grew as well, transport in the city became a big problem. Some new way of travelling was needed and people looked to² the innovations of the Industrial Revolution. The invention of the steam engine was relatively new and exciting and people began to think that it could be possible to transport people by trains underground. So it was that in 1863, using techniques borrowed from digging tunnels for other uses, a 2-mile line from Paddington in West London to Farringdon in East London was built. Major cities all over the world soon copied this type of city transit engineering. The most famous include:

1. Moscow underground which is the largest in terms of passenger numbers, with more than a billion passenger journeys a year. Some underground stations are very beautiful and include sculptures, mosaic pictures in the ceilings, picturesque decorations. The price of a Metro ticket is less than \$0.5. The first line was open in the thirties of the 20th century.



¹ a space shuttle [ʃu:tl] — космический аппарат, межконтинентальная ракетная установка
² to look to — to give all your attention to sth

2. The New York underground which is the largest in terms of kilometres covered. It is often called the "Subway" and is one of the world's cheapest, with a single journey to and from any station just \$2. It is characterized by the fact that its lines are named by numbers and letters (like 1, 3 and A, D) and has carriages that are heated in winter and air-conditioned in summer.



3. The Paris Metro which was built at the turn of the 20th century¹ and has 368 stations covering 15 lines and transporting around six million people daily. Some stations are designed in a very artistic way characterized by flower and leaf motifs. The architect Hector Guimard decorated this mass transit system in tune with the city.



4. The Tokyo subway which became notorious² in 1995 when Aum Shinri Kyo cult³ used Sarin gas on a train, killing 12 people. However, it is one of the safest underground systems and generally people characterise it as the world's best in terms of ease of use and comfort.



5. The London Underground (The Metropolitan Railway) which was opened in 1863 and Londoners at once began speaking about it as a fashionable way to travel. The Metropolitan Railway grew and began to be called the Tube because of the narrow tunnels that characterize the older parts of the system. Today the London Underground covers most of Greater London with 11 different lines and 970 million passenger journeys every year.



¹ at the turn of the 20th century — a начале XX столетия
² notorious [nu:'tɔ:riəs] — широкоизвестный, дурной славы; печально известный
³ cult [kʌlt] — культ, поклонение; культ секты

- 5 Look at the pictures and speak about the progress in transportation. Use the words and word combinations from the box.

At the beginning... Then... Later... After some time... With years... Nowadays... In the future...



boat



chariot



carriage



cart



car



bus



ocean liner



electric train



plane



helicopter



spaceship

Mention the following:

- why transportation developed so fast
- what kind of transportation people wanted to have (speed, comfort, the number of passengers)
- what transportation will be like in the future

- 6 Complete the text with the right words. Discuss the problem.

Space and Us

In March 2004 a new planet was ⁽¹⁾ 10 billion kilometers from Earth and was named Sedna. It was found by the Hubble ⁽²⁾ which cost millions of dollars. Some people say Sedna is not really a planet. Anyway, the news ⁽³⁾ very exciting because the planet ⁽⁴⁾ beyond the planetary solar system. Space now has become ⁽⁵⁾. Such countries as Russia, the USA and Japan are planning to send more astronauts into ⁽⁶⁾ space and spend more money on it. Is space exploration so important? Read the arguments below and say with which of them you agree.

YES

- ✓ We need to know more about the universe we live in. We must do it so that we can make more ⁽⁷⁾ to improve our world.
- ✓ We need to find out if there is life and water on other planets.
- ✓ We must be ready to colonize other planets.

NO

- ✓ The money for space exploration should be spent on looking ⁽⁸⁾ planet Earth as we live on it.
- ✓ We should spend ⁽⁹⁾ money on poor people.
- ✓ We should think more about ⁽¹⁰⁾ health than about going to other planets.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1) a) invented | b) discovered | c) opened |
| 2) a) microscope | b) periscope | c) telescope |
| 3) a) is | b) are | c) will be |
| 4) a) found | b) finds | c) was found |
| 5) a) large | b) larger | c) the largest |
| 6) a) — | b) a | c) the |
| 7) a) discoveries | b) inventions | c) equipment |
| 8) a) at | b) for | c) after |
| 9) a) these | b) those | c) this |
| 10) a) people | b) people's | c) peoples' |

2 You are asked to prepare a talk on space exploration beginning with the first manned flight. Speak about the highlights¹ in this field. Mention these:

- the Soviet Union and the USA in their competition to explore space
- famous Soviet cosmonauts
- cooperation in space exploration.

Consider the following:

Highlights of manned space missions

- 1) 1961 — Vostok 1 (USSR). Yuri Gagarin is the first to orbit the Earth.
- 2) 1963 — Vostok 6 (USSR). Valentina Tereshkova becomes the first woman in space.
- 3) 1965 — Voskhod 2 (USSR). Alexei Leonov is the first to leave a spaceship for a space walk.
- 4) 1968 — Apollo 8 (USA). First manned flight orbits the Moon.
- 5) 1969 — Apollo 11 (USA). First manned Moon landing; Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin walk on the Moon.
- 6) 1975 — Soyuz 19 (USSR) and Apollo 18 (USA). The American and Soviet crews cooperate in experiments.
- 7) 1986 — Soyuz T15 (USSR). Russia launches a new space station, *Mir*, into the Earth's orbit.
- 8) 1993—1999 (USA). Mars Orbiters were launched to study the Martian [məʃ(ə)n] weather, climate and water and carbon dioxide budget.
- 9) 2000—2005 — USA, Russia, Europe and Japan work in cooperation and launch space probes, Mars, Lunar, Saturn and Pluto orbiters to explore the Earth and the other planets.

4 A. Listen to the dialogue "Should We Spend so Much Money Exploring Space?". (59). then read and role-play it.

Should We Spend so Much Money Exploring Space?

A.: My short answer to this question is yes. We are part of the universe. I think we must find out what else there is in it.
B.: Sorry, but I don't think space discoveries could help us. At least² I can't see how space exploration has helped us so far.

¹ highlights — моменты века

² at least — по крайней мере

A.: Well, it may be that it hasn't helped a lot. Definitely it hasn't helped to find a cure for this or that illness. But I am sure we may find something in space that will help us to find such cures in the future or we may discover something else.

B.: You may be right. But all these advantages are so uncertain and space exploration is so expensive.

A.: Oh yes, it is. You're absolutely right here, but I don't think we can spend less. We can't tell the scientists to make it cheaper and we need to know what is happening in the universe. It might help us to survive. And do you think we should stop exploring space?

B.: I'm not quite sure but I think we can stop it for a few years and spend the money on more important things.

A.: Like what?

B.: Like pollution, illnesses. We should think about drinking water. In fact we should spend this money on the Earth's problems.

2 In one or two groups organize a talk about billions spent on space exploration in which some students speak for and some against it. Give examples.



Focus on Social English

Learn to express doubt and certainty¹ in English

Doubt

I'm not quite sure but...
I have a feeling that...
It must be...
It may be...
It might be...
It could be...
It is possible that...
It is probable that...

Certainty

I'm sure that...
I'm certain that...
I have no doubt about it.
There is no doubt about it.
I'm positive.
I know I'm right.

Note: Определите, что модальные must, may, could, might и их производные выражают разную степень сомнения.



¹ doubt and certainty — сомнение и уверенность

6 Express certainty or doubt and give your reaction to the following.

- 1) In the future there will be no nations or races, all peoples will be one big family.
- 2) In the 21st century humans will colonize other planets of the solar system.
- 3) Very soon people will make machines do all possible work for them and spend most of the time enjoying themselves.
- 4) Very soon books will disappear and their role will be played by computers.
- 5) It's not so long before all children will be taught at home with the help of special computer programmes.
- 6) The world ocean contains as many secrets and mysteries as outer space.
- 7) The planet Earth is facing some very bad ecological problems.
- 8) Soon there will be no paper money or coins, only bank cards.
- 9) In the near future people will live not less than 200 years.
- 10) There will be no difference between town and country. All people will live in megapolises.

10 Add to the dialogue phrases expressing doubt and certainty.



A.: Look! There's some object in the sky, then, above the hill.

B.: It's an aeroplane.

A.: Oh, no, look, it's flying too fast for a plane. It's UFO.

B.: Don't be silly. I don't believe in UFOs. They are a fruit of people's imagination.

A.: What makes you so sure? Look, it's coming nearer. It has a funny shape. Is it a big bird?

B.: No, it isn't. Birds move their wings. If this thing has wings, it doesn't move them.

A.: It's not a plane or a helicopter because there is no noise. It's an UFO! It is so exciting!

B.: Don't speak too soon¹. It is not. Wait! I see now! It is a hang-glider²!



¹ Don't speak too soon. — *the sooner the better*.

² a hang-glider — *paraplane*.

10 Work in pairs, use the phrases from Focus on Social English (p. 177) and discuss if

- 1) yetis (big hairy manlike animals) live in the Himalayan Mountains
- 2) the Loch Ness Monster really lives in a lake in Scotland
- 3) life was brought onto our planet from space
- 4) most of our planet will soon be under water

Do It on Your Own

6 Write a paragraph about one of the astronauts. Mention the following:

- what the astronaut's name is and where he/she is from
- when his/her spaceship was launched into space
- if he/she was alone on the orbit or worked with a crew
- why his/her flight is memorable

10 Complete the sentences. Make them true.

- 1) I'm quite certain that ...
- 2) The most difficult thing in the world must be ...
- 3) ..., there is no doubt about it.
- 4) I have always had a feeling that ...
- 5) ... must be quite easy.
- 6) ... and I know I'm right.
- 7) ... might be a wonderful thing to have (do).

Section Seven. Creative Writing

Now you know some important things about paragraphs. Here they are.

- 1) A paragraph is a group of sentences.
- 2) A paragraph has a main idea.
- 3) All the sentences in a paragraph work together to tell about the main idea.
- 4) The main idea is expressed in a topic sentence.
- 5) The topic sentence is usually the first sentence in a paragraph.
- 6) The topic sentence tells what the paragraph is going to be about.

You will now learn how to develop paragraphs. There are many ways to do it. The main of them are:

- 1) by using details (adjectives, adverbs, specific words, synonyms);
- 2) by using examples.

Developing a paragraph by using details

Details are the facts and pieces of information a writer tells about someone or something. Details help to make a person or a place more interesting for the reader. They help to create a strong image.

Developing a paragraph by using an example

In this kind of paragraph, the topic sentence expresses the main idea. The rest of the sentences give an example. The example explains the main idea. Read how the paragraph is developed by using an example:

Dolphins can solve simple problems. There are two pools — a big one and a small one — with the gates between them in Florida dolphinarium. One night, some dolphins wanted to play in the big pool. They found out how to use their noses to open the gates.

- 1 Read the words and phrases in the two columns. Column A has them without details, column B has them with some details added. Notice how details help to create images.

A

a/the field
a/the child
a/the woman
a/the flower
a/the road

B

a/the yellow field of sunflowers
a/the happy six-year-old child
a/the tall young woman
a/the beautiful red rose
a/the narrow road in the forest

- 2 Add to these words some details to make up phrases.

1) a/the cat; 2) a/the horse; 3) a/the shirt; 4) a/the toy; 5) a/the day; 6) a/the boy; 7) the Moon; 8) a/the tree; 9) a/the girl; 10) a/the house

- 3 Compare the two paragraphs and say what details help to make the second paragraph more colourful.

Paragraph 1. The River House was old. After the fire nobody lived there. It looked sad and lonely.

Paragraph 2. The River House was as old as any of the other buildings in West Street. But after the fire it looked sadder than the rest of them. All the people had moved out. The broken windows stared like blind eyes. The smell of smoke still hung about the empty rooms.

- 4 Here are some topic sentences. Choose one and develop a paragraph by adding details.

- 1) The room was messy.
- 2) My birthday present was an exciting surprise.
- 3) I opened the door and there stood ...
- 4) The sky was beautiful that night.
- 5) Topsy was the most unusual boy I have ever met.

- 5 Here are some topic sentences. Choose one and develop a paragraph by using an example.

- 1) Sometimes your best friend can hurt your feelings.
- 2) You can learn a lot from books.
- 3) Good things always seem to happen on Saturdays.
- 4) Our town has interesting places to visit.
- 5) I made some important discoveries last summer.

- 6 Write out the details used in this paragraph.

The four children were sent to the house of an old Professor. He lived in the heart of the country, ten miles from the nearest railway station and two miles from the nearest post office. He had no wife and he lived in a very large house with a housekeeper and three servants. He himself was a very old man with long white hair and they liked him almost at once.

- 7 Develop the paragraph by using an example.

Many interesting people have visited our school. One of the most interesting was...

Teenagers: Their Life and Problems

Section One

Do It Together

1. Listen to the song. (5'), and say what it is about.
2. Read the lyrics and sing the song along.

Dancing Queen

(Benny Andersson, Björn Ulvæus, Stick Anderson)

You can dance, you can give
having the time of your life
see that girl, watch that scene
dig in the Dancing Queen

Friday night and the lights are low
looking out for the place to go
where they play the right music
getting in the swing
you come to look for a king

Anybody could be that guy
night is young and the music's high
with a bit of rock music
everything is fine

танцевать под быструю
дискотечную музыку
сцена
присоединиться
к танцующим
неприн, присутствии

парень, мужчина
гроккан

you're in the mood for a dance
and when you get the chance
You are the Dancing Queen
young and sweet only seventeen
Dancing Queen
feel the beat from the tambourine,
oh yeah

you can dance, you can give
having the time of your life
see that girl, watch that scene
dig in the Dancing Queen

You're a teaser you turn 'em on

leave 'em burning and then you're
gone

looking out for another
anyone will do
you're in the mood for dance
and when you get the chance

You are the Dancing Queen
young and sweet only seventeen
Dancing Queen
feel the beat from the tambourine,
oh yeah

you can dance, you can give
having the time of your life
see that girl, watch that scene
dig in the Dancing Queen

2 Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you have any problems with pocket money? What do you spend it on?
- 2) What other problems do you have? Which is the worst of them?
- 3) Do your parents always understand and support you? How much time do you spend together?
- 4) How important are your friends for you? What do you usually do together? What do you talk about?
- 5) Are you a member of any young people's organization? Why? Why not?
- 6) Can you say that being a teen (a teenager) is easy? What is the best time in a person's life? Why?

в настроении
танс

парень

искусительница,
насмешница
сгорающие от чувства

все равно кто

3 Choose the right verb to complete the sentences.

- 1) I have very little time, I just can't afford (to stay/staying) here any longer. 2) My younger brother enjoys (to play/playing) basketball. 3) As I keep (to tell/telling) you, everything will be fine. 4) Can you name two or three good films (to watch/watching)? 5) At the weekend we had a wonderful time (to walk/walking) in the park. 6) Isn't the child too odd (to do/doing) such silly things? 7) I don't mind (to tell/telling) you the truth at all. 8) Did Susan *tha* apologize fur (not to come/not coming) to your birthday party? 9) We all remember (to take/taking) part in the skiing competition.



Focus on Grammar

1. После некоторых глаголов (*begin, start* в английском языке возможно использование как инфинитива, так и V_{ing} , при этом значение высказывания практически не меняется. Сравни:

Ralph started to run. I began to laugh.
He started running. I began laughing.

Обрати внимание на то, что, если эти глаголы употребляются в форме продолженного времени, после них возможно использовать только инфинитив.

Now that I feel better I'm beginning to eat more.
The leaves are starting to fall off the trees.

2. После некоторых глаголов, например *stop, remember, forget*, также возможно употребление как инфинитива, так и V_{ing} , однако в этом случае мы наблюдаем различие в значении.

Stop doing something <i>перестать делать что-то</i>	Stop to do something <i>остановиться, чтобы что-то сделать</i>
a) John really must stop smoking.	a) I stopped to have a talk with my neighbour.
b) It has stopped raining.	b) Can you stop at the shop to buy some bread?

Remember/forget doing something

помнить/забыть то, что произошло в прошлом

- a) I still remember visiting the Lake District.
b) I shall never forget dancing at my first ball.

Remember/forget to do something

помнить/забыть то, что необходимо сделать

- a) I never remember to take the post out of the letter box.
b) We often forget to do things we have to do.

4 Choose the right form of the verb to complete the sentences. Say where both the forms are possible.

- 1) Did you remember (posting/to post) the letter that I had given to you? 2) Uncle Philip stopped (saying/to say) hi to us. 3) We began (learning/to learn) English four years ago. 4) The child couldn't stop (crying/to cry). 5) I think I'll always remember (meeting/to meet) our President. 6) We stopped at the lake (looking/to look) at the map as we didn't know where to go. 7) I started (understanding/to understand) English. 8) The train stopped (taking/to take) in the passengers. 9) Can you, please, stop (talking/to talk)? 10) We began (playing/to play) a new game of golf. 11) I remember (watching/to watch) a film about the first man landing on the Moon. 12) Please, remember (telephoning/to telephone) me tonight. 13) You mustn't forget (taking/to take) the medicine the doctor has prescribed to you. 14) Can't you stop (making/to make) that awful noise? 15) My granddaughter has already begun (reading/to read).

5 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape. [52] (52), and repeat

A.

author ['ɔ:bə] — автор
ruble ['rʌbl] — рубль
восстановить
rebellion [ri'beljən] — восстание
бунт, мятеж
anyway ['eniweɪ] — во всяком случае, тем не менее

quite [kwɪt] — совсем, совершенно, вполне
notice ['nɒɪs] — замечать
pretty ['prɪti] — 1) *adj* симпатичный; 2) *adv* достаточно, довольно
irritate ['ɪrɪteɪt] — раздражать

shake [ʃeɪk] (shook/shaken) — трясти
 seat [si:t] — сиденье, место
 couple ['kʌpl] — пара
 mad [mæd] — сумасшедший, безумный

I got bored... — Мне надоело...
 You can't help it! — Нельзя помочь! (Нельзя иначе)

B.

author (n): a famous author. Dickens was the author of "Oliver Twist".

rebel (v): to rebel against somebody or something. It's natural for teenagers to rebel. Liberal parents often leave their kids nothing to rebel against.

rebellion (n): a military rebellion, teenage rebellion. The capital was destroyed during the rebellion. They are now discussing the problem of teenage rebellion against their parents.

anyway (adv): It will probably rain, but we'll go out anyway. I can't come tonight, but thank you for the invitation anyway.

irritate (v): to irritate parents, to irritate grown-ups. The slow journey irritated me.

shake (v): to be shaking all over, to be shaking like a leaf, to shake slowly, to shake with laughter, to shake hands. The house shook when the trains went by. The news has shaken us. The girl stood shaking with laughter.

quite (adv): quite old, quite happy. You're quite right. It's quite warm today.

notice (v): to notice somebody/something. Did you notice that Mr Bennett was driving a new car?

pretty: 1) (adj) a pretty girl, a pretty poem, a pretty face. Your cousin is very pretty. 2) (adv) pretty hard, pretty slow. Your work is pretty good, but it could be better.

seat (n): a good seat, a seat at the front; to take (have) a seat. We have enough seats for everyone. I couldn't get a seat on the bus. Will you, please, take a seat?

couple (n): 1) a couple of friends. A couple of police officers were standing at the door. 2) a happy couple, a married couple, a new young couple. My father and mother are a happy couple.

mad (adj): to go mad, to become mad; to have a mad idea, to be mad about something. He went mad and spent the rest of his life

in a hospital. The world has gone absolutely mad. Julie is mad about pop music.

get bored: Steve was getting bored with the game. He got pretty bored with her endless complaining.

can't/couldn't help it: You should visit her every day. You can't help it.

4 Paraphrase these sentences using the words and phrases from ex.5.

1) John is very fond of animals. 2) Who wrote "The Old Man and the Sea"? 3) Sally's endless questions make me rather angry. 4) Boris is rather well-educated. 5) Did you see that Jennifer was the first to leave the party? 6) You should learn these lines by heart. You have no choice. 7) The weather can change but we shall go skiing whatever happens. 8) The child protested and didn't want to do what her parent had told her to do. 9) Ann's little daughter was so lovely, so nice. 10) Tom pushed the apple-tree, made a lot of quick movements side to side and some apples fell onto the ground.

1 Look at the pictures and make up a short story about each of them.



1) author is get bored



2) pretty



3) shake hands



4) notice



5) irritate



6) mad idea



7) rebel



8) newly married couple



Focus on Vocabulary

В английском языке два существительных **couple** и **pair** соответствуют русскому «пара». Обратите внимание на различия в их использовании.

Couple	Pair
1) два предмета (часто не составляющих пару) a couple of apples a couple of books	два парных предмета a pair of shoes/boots a pair of gloves/mittens
2) несколько предметов или явлений (не всегда два) a couple of years a couple of days a couple of cakes	a pair of socks/tyres a pair of trousers a pair of pyjamas a pair of slippers a pair of eyes

Couple	Pair
1) муж, жена a married couple a loving couple several couples of dancers	

6 Complete the sentences. Use the words **pair** or **couple**.

- 1) Alice bought a ... of fashionable boots for winter. 2) Jason always keeps a ... of periodicals on his desk to read them during the break. 3) My breakfast usually consists of a cup of coffee and a ... of sandwiches. 4) My advice is to keep another ... of glasses at hand. 5) I have a ... of very good friends whom I love dearly. 6) She will arrive in a ... of days. We are preparing a room for her. 7) This ... of trousers will go very well with your new jacket. 8) These socks are different, they are not a ... 9) What a wonderful ... of eyes she has! 10) Everyone knows that Andrew and Margo are a loving ...

7 A Listen to the text, (53), then read it.

Holden Comes to See His Teacher

Part 1



"The Catcher in the Rye" by the American author J. D. Salinger may be the world's most famous book about a teenager. The main character's name is Holden Caulfield and he is going through the period of teenage rebellion. In the passage you are going to read Holden has just been expelled¹ from a good school for poor academic performance and he has come to Mr Spencer's home to say goodbye to his old teacher.

"Hello, sir," I said. "I got your note. Thanks a lot." He'd written me this note asking me to stop by and say good-bye. "You didn't have to do all that. I wanted to come over to say good-bye anyway."

1 "The Catcher in the Rye" — «Ловец за рыбой», традиционный перевод произведения — «Пад промывае за рыбу»
2 to expel — изгнать (из школы)

"Have a seat there, boy," old Spencer said. "So you're leaving us, eh?"

"Yes, sir. I guess I am."

"Have you told your parents yet?"

"No, sir, I haven't, because I'll probably see them Wednesday night when I get home."

"And how do you think they'll take the news?"

"Well... they'll be pretty irritated about it," I said. "They really will. This is about the fourth school I've gone to." I shook my head. I shake my head quite a lot. "Boy?" I said. I also say "Boy" quite a lot. Partly because I have a lousy² vocabulary and partly because I act quite young for my age sometimes. I was sixteen then, and I'm seventeen now, and sometimes I act like I'm about thirteen. It's really ironical, because I'm six foot two and a half and I have gray hair. I really do. The one side of my head—the right side—is full of millions of gray hairs. I've had them ever since I was a kid. And yet I still act sometimes like I was only about twelve. Everybody says that, especially my father. It's partly true, too, but it isn't all true. I get bored sometimes when people tell me to act my age. Sometimes I act a lot older than I am—I really do—but people never notice it. People never notice anything.

"What's the matter with you, boy?" old Spencer said. "How many subjects did you carry³ this term?"

"Five, sir."

"I flunked⁴ you in history because you knew absolutely nothing."

"I know that, sir. Boy, I know it. You couldn't help it."

"I doubt very much if you opened your textbook even once the whole term. Did you? Tell the truth, boy."

"Well, I sort of looked through it a couple of times," I told him. I didn't want to hurt his feelings. He was mad about history.

8. Say which is right.

1) Holden was a ... pupil.

a) good b) not very good c) bad

2) Mr Spencer taught ... in Holden's school.

a) literature b) history c) geography

¹ Boy? — сокращённое, разговорное название для учеников

² lousy [laʊi] — отвратительный

³ to carry (a subject) — иметь дисциплину

⁴ to flunk [flʌŋk] — провалить(ся) на экзамене

3) Holden's parents ...

a) were very angry with him

b) were coming to Holden's school on Wednesday

c) didn't know anything about his problems

4) Holden ... acted his age.

a) never b) sometimes c) always

5) Holden was ... most children of his age.

a) taller than b) shorter than c) as tall as

6) Holden said that he had tried to prepare for the examination because he knew ...

a) his teacher would be sorry to hear that he hadn't

b) he was telling the truth

c) the teacher could get mad



Focus on Vocabulary

1. Разные варианты из которого вы познакомились, написан американским писателем. Сравните эти слова вы можете найти в тексте.

a) Слова grey приводится в тексте в американской орфографии, британский вариант этого слова — grey.

b) Слова flunk и guess (в значении «угадать») используются преимущественно в американском английском.

c) Структура предложения после would write (He'd written me...) также является для американского варианта (ср.: He'd written to me...).

2. Кроме того, текст написан от лица подростка, поэтому в нем много разговорных, неформальных слов и выражений.

bury [baɪi] = terrible, very bad

kid = child

to be mad about somebody or something = to love

sort of = in some ways or a little

9. Read the text "Holden Comes to See His Teacher" again and answer the questions.

1) How much do we know about the way Holden looked? How tall was he if 1 foot = 0.3 metre and 1 inch = 2.5 centimetres.

2) Do you think he was sure of himself or was he a self-questioning boy?

3) Did he care about other people's feelings?

4) Do you think Holden and his parents always understood each other? What makes you think so?

- 5) What in your opinion made Holden "act younger than his age"? Is it typical of teenager children?
 6) Why do you think Holden didn't do well in schools? Does he impress you as a boy who had no talents?
 7) Would you like to read the book "The Catcher in the Rye"? Why? Why not?

Do It on Your Own

- 1) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets (Vto/Vsup).

1) I would like to apologize for (be) so rude. 2) Paul said he was looking forward to (see) Mary again. 3) I have finished (read) the article. 4) I have always tried (help) people when they needed my help. 5) Can we afford (buy) these devices? 6) Did you have a good time (play) football? 7) I'm used to (get) up early and (do) my homework in the morning. 8) Cheer up! and keep (smile). 9) Never forget (answer) letters you get. 10) His accent is easy (understand). 11) She is clever enough (answer) all your questions. 12) You should stop him from (fly) to Vladivostok, he has a weak heart.

- 2) Express the same in English.

A. 1) Я остановился у дверей, чтобы поздороваться с соседом. 2) Начиная мыть посуду, я скоро приду и помогу тебе. 3) Ты помнишь, как мы покупали эту книгу? 4) Дети услышали звонок и перестали разговаривать. 5) Не забудь позвонить маме. 6) Я не могу забыть, как навестил друга в прошлое Рождество. 7) Я всегда забываю покупать соль или спички. 8) Ты можешь остановиться у почты, чтобы послать телеграмму?

B. 1) Джон и Мэри — такая чудесная пара. 2) У нас очень много работы, нам нужна еще одна пара рук. 3) Когда я еду куда-нибудь, я обычно беру с собой пару книг. 4) Я бы хотел сказать вам пару слов. 5) Эта пара типичен будет хорошим подарком для дедушки. 6) У меня в шкафу всегда есть несколько ручек и пара карандашей.

¹ Cheer up! — Be yourselves!

Section Two

Do It Together

- 1) Listen to what five British teenagers (1–5) think about the way they spend money, (2) (54), and match their names with the statements in the textbook (a–f). There is one extra statement.



1. Josh 2. Walter 3. Jennifer 4. Victoria 5. Hannah

Statements:

- a) I turn to my parents for help.
 b) I spend about one hundred pounds on going out and buying CDs every month.
 c) I would like to take the money management course at school.
 d) It is difficult for me to live on the money I have.
 e) I often buy things without thinking if I really need them.
 f) I think lessons about money management at school could be useful only for young children.

- 2) You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A	B
to rebel	a rebel, rebellious
to irritate	irritation
to notice	a notice
pretty	prettily
to bore	boredom
mad	madness, madly

- 1) The rebels fought against the government army and killed a number of soldiers.
 2) My brother sometimes feels rebellious and argues with our parents.
 3) Jane's irritation is easy to understand: she told us the truth but we didn't listen to her.

- 4) He put up a notice on the door, saying that the gym was closed.
 5) All the girls were prettily dressed and looked their best.
 6) The boredom of the waiting was terrible.
 7) It will be madness to travel alone to that dangerous place.
 8) He fell madly in love with Sue as soon as he saw her.



Focus on Grammar

1 В английском языке инфинитив часто встречается в составе структуры, которая называется **сложным дополнением (complex object)**.

I want Ann to come with me. (Я хочу, чтобы Анна пошла со мной.)
 Сокращённое *Ann to come* и есть **сложное дополнение**, которое состоит из имени существительного и в данном случае инфинитива с частичей *to*.

2 Если вместо имени существительного в предложении используется местоимение, оно ставится в объектном падеже (*me, you, him, her, it, us, them*).

I want them to return on time. (Я хочу, чтобы они вернулись вовремя.)

3 Запомни глаголы и глагольные конструкции, после которых в составе сложного дополнения входит инфинитив с частичей *to*: *to want, to expect, would like, would love*.

Tom would like his parents to take him to Florida. (Тому хотелось бы, чтобы родители взяли его во Флориду.)

We expect him to finish the article on Monday. (Мы ожидаем, что он закончит статью в понедельник.)

Paraphrase these sentences using pronouns instead of the words in **bold type**¹.

Example: I expect **Julia** to come back tomorrow.
 I expect **her** to come back tomorrow.

- 1) I would like **my brother** to buy a new book by this author.
 2) We want **the boys** to get good marks for their exams.
 3) My parents expect **my sister and me** to get up rather early on Sunday.
 4) I don't want **Ed** to irritate me.
 5) We would love **Tom and Sue** to get married.
 6) They expect **Betty** to reappear soon.
 7) My granny would like **my parents and me** to visit her more often.
 8) Your cousins say they would like **your family** to meet Aunt Polly at the airport.
 9) Do you expect **Bob** to drive all that distance himself?
 10) I expect **Jennie and Max** to inform me about their plans.

¹ Instead of the words in **bold type** — *another case, additional example*

4 Make up your own sentences about yourself.

I	would like want expect	my parents my friends my teacher my pet	to buy a new computer to buy a digital camera to go to the disco with me to explain the rule again to give us fewer tasks to obey me to follow my commands
---	------------------------------	---	---

1 Mr Harrison is instructing his new secretary. Look at the pictures and say what he wants/doesn't want her to do. Use also *would like/wouldn't like, expects/doesn't expect*.



1) to type documents



2) to play games on the computer



3) to make tea



4) to do shopping in her working hours



5) to water the flowers



6) to talk over the phone



7) to photocopy documents



8) to be late

Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (55), and repeat.

A.

top [tɒp] — верх
pile [paɪl] — стопка
extremely [ɪk'stri:mli] — чрезвычайно
reason ['ri:zən] — причина
various ['vɜ:ziəs] — различные, разнообразный
wrap [rəp] — завертывать

riddle ['rɪdl] — загадка
challenge ['tʃɪlɪndʒ] — задача, трудная задача
although [ə'lðəʊ] — хотя
respect [rɪ'spekt] — уважать
note [nəʊt] — записка, примечание
bottom ['bɒtəm] — низ, дно

B.

top (n): the top of the hill, the top of the wardrobe, to be at the top of the class. We could see the mountain tops in the distance. Alex has been at the top of his class since he went to school.
pile (n): a pile of books, a pile of letters. Nancy put her clothes in to tidy piles. There were two piles of papers on the desk.
extremely (adv): extremely foolish, extremely kind. It is extremely important to record everything that happens.
reason (n): a reason for something. What is your reason for going to London? The reason I'm going to London is that I want to.
various (adj): various goods, various zones. His reasons for leaving were many and various.
wrap (v): to wrap something round oneself, to wrap sth in something. We have just finished wrapping up Sue's birthday present. Keep the apples fresh by wrapping each one individually.
riddle (n): a book of riddles, the answer to the riddle, to solve a riddle, to talk in riddles. Are you good at solving riddles? She talks in riddles and explain what is going on.
challenge (n): a challenge to fight, a challenge for somebody. Jane was bored with her job and felt she needed a new challenge. This new task is a real challenge for me.
although (conj): Although he is poor, he is honest. Although it had rained, the shop was closed when he got there. She calls me Tina although I'm as tall as she is.
respect (n): to show respect for sb, to have respect of sb. Students show their respect for the teacher by not talking in class. She has worked hard to have the respect of her colleagues ['kɒlɪɡs].

respectfully (adv): to answer respectfully, to speak respectfully. Jane always speaks respectfully of others.
note (n): a note from dad, to write sb a note. We left them a note saying we'd be back around ten.
bottom (n): the bottom of the sea, the bottom of the page. The girl ran down to the bottom of the hill. Read what is written on the bottom of the box.

Match these words with their definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1) bottom | a) an invitation to take part in a competition |
| 2) top | b) explanation for what has happened |
| 3) pile | c) the lowest part of an object |
| 4) reason | d) different and more than a few |
| 5) various | e) a question that seems impossible or silly, but sometimes has a clever answer |
| 6) wrap | f) the highest part of an object |
| 7) riddle | g) to cover something by putting paper round it |
| 8) note | h) a number of things lying one on top of another |
| 9) respect | i) to think highly of somebody |
| 10) challenge | j) a piece of writing to call attention to something |

4. Read the text and say why Mr Spencer was unhappy about Holden's essay.

Holden Comes to See His Teacher

Part II



"Your exam paper is over there on top of the pile. Bring it here, please," said old Spencer. It was a very dirty trick, but I went over and brought it over to him — I didn't have any alternative. At that moment I was sorry that I'd stopped by to say good-bye to him.

"We studied the Egyptians [ɪ'dʒɪptɪənz] from November 4th to December 2nd," he said. "You chose to write about them. Would you care to hear what you had to say?"

"No, sir, not very much," I said.
He read it anyway, though. You can't stop a teacher when they want to do something. They just do it.

The Egyptians were an ancient race of Caucasians¹ living in one of the northern sections of Africa. The latter as we all know is the largest continent in the Eastern Hemisphere².

The Egyptians are extremely interesting to us today for various reasons. Modern science would still like to know what the secret ingredients were that the Egyptians used when they wrapped up dead people so that their faces would not rot³ for innumerable centuries. This interesting riddle is still quite a challenge to modern science in the twentieth century.

He stopped reading and put my paper down. I was beginning to hate him. "Your essay ends there," he said in his very sarcastic voice. "However, you left me a little note, at the bottom the page," he said.

"I know I did," I said. I said it very fast because I wanted to stop him before he started reading that out loud. But you couldn't stop him.

DEAR MR SPENCER [he read]. That is all I know about the Egyptians. I am not very interested in them although your lectures are very interesting. It is all right with me if you flunk me though as I am flunking everything else except English anyway. Respectfully yours,

Holden Caulfield.

A Listen to the same text, [45] (56), then learn to read it aloud and find its English equivalents for the following:

- 1) отаратительная уловка
- 2) У меня не было выбора.
- 3) по ряду причин
- 4) неизвестные компоненты
- 5) Такое ощущение на этом заканчивается.
- 6) самым саркастическим тоном, на который он был способен
- 7) я не против (того, чтобы).
- 8) я проваливаю все остальное
- 9) с уважением

¹ Caucasians [kə'keɪziən] — кавказцы, жители Кавказа

² a hemisphere ['hemɪsfeɪə] — полушарие

³ to rot — гнить, разлагаться

Answer the questions on the text "Holden Comes to His Teacher".

- 1) Did Holden understand that the essay he had written was no good?
- 2) What was wrong with the essay?
- 3) Why didn't Holden want his teacher to read his essay out loud?
- 4) Why had Holden written a note to Mr Spencer at the bottom of the page?
- 5) Did his teacher understand him?
- 6) Why does it often happen that children and grown-ups don't understand each other? Did it ever happen to you? What is the best way to understanding?
- 7) How do you understand the term *generation gap*? Can you give an example of how it works?
- 8) Do you think the generation gap is a really big problem?

Do It on Your Own

B Complete the sentences with prepositions and adverbs.

- 1) They usually put the number of a page ... the bottom of it.
- 2) If you talk ... riddles, no one will understand you.
- 3) There was a small cottage ... the top ... the hill.
- 4) What is your reason ... speaking so rudely with them?
- 5) His offer is a challenge ... me.
- 6) My younger brother never showed any respect ... me.
- 7) The note on the table was ... my parents.
- 8) There was a huge pile ... papers near her computer.
- 9) I have just finished wrapping ... the vase I'm going to give my mother for X-mas.
- 10) You can show your respect ... the rules by following them.

B Express the same in Russian.

- 1) Я хочу, чтобы ты прочитал эту книгу.
- 2) Я не хочу, чтобы Макс приходил домой поздно.
- 3) Мне бы хотелось, чтобы мой друг помог мне.
- 4) Мне бы не хотелось, чтобы мама так много работала.
- 5) Мы ожидаем, что они выигрывают этот матч.
- 6) Они не ожидают, что мы вернемся так скоро.
- 7) Он не хотел, чтобы его родители знали об этом.
- 8) Наши учителя ожидают, что мы хорошо напишем тест.

Section Three

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text "Unusual School". (57), read the statements below (1-7) and say which of them are true, false or not mentioned in the text.



- 1) Teenagers usually love music.
- 2) All pupils in the UK can study DJing at school.
- 3) The BRIT school prepares only radio presenters.
- 4) The BRIT school has a lot of money to develop DJ projects.
- 5) All students who want to become DJs should imitate some music star.
- 6) Shortie, a pupil of the BRIT school, thinks that he should have good academic results.
- 7) Sharon and Lauren became radio presenters when they were 16.

- 2 You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A

pile
extremely
reason
various
challenge
respect

note

B

to pile
extreme
reasonable
variety
challenging
respectable
respectful
to note

- 1) He piled food onto his plate and went to the table near the window.
- 2) I'd like to thank you for your extreme kindness.
- 3) You must be reasonable; I can't meet you at the station while I am at work.
- 4) Daniel says that his job is boring — there is no variety in it.
- 5) The work we had to do was hard but challenging.
- 6) Everyone thinks that Mr Ross is a respectable man, who can be an example to us all.
- 7) Mr Harrison was a respectable gentleman of about seventy.
- 8) You should be more respectful to your parents.
- 9) It is so interesting to note that the biggest part of the city was built only recently.

- 1 Say what your family usually

- a) expect/don't expect
- b) want/don't want
- c) would like/wouldn't like

What is your usual reaction? Do you enjoy, hate or don't mind it?

Example: My granny wants me to do the shopping every Saturday and I don't mind it.

- 2 Describe your future as you would like it to be. Use the complex object where you can.

Example: I would like to have a big family. I would like my will-be husband (wife) to love and understand me. I would like us to live in the country in a comfortable house.



Focus on Grammar

Сложное дополнение (complex object) в английском языке часто используется после так называемых глаголов чувственного, слухового и зрительного восприятия: to feel, to hear, to see, to watch, to notice.

Example: I saw Ann dance at the party.
We heard Tom play the piano.

Обратите внимание на то, что в структуре сложного дополнения после вышеупомянутых глаголов инфинитив употребляется без частицы to.

2. После этих же глаголов в структуре сложного предложения вместо инфинитива без частицы *to* может употребляться *participle I* / другого *participle*. Например:

I saw Ann *dancing* at the party.
We heard him *playing* the piano.
John noticed Alex *looking* at her.

3. Различие слушается, описанный в п. 1 и 2, заключается в том, что инфинитив используется, чтобы выразить завершенное действие, а participle — действие незавершенное, находящееся в процессе.

I saw Ann *dance* at the party. (Я видел, что Анна танцевала на вечеру.)
I saw Ann *dancing* at the party. (Я видел, как Анна танцевала на вечеру.)

Это различие можно проиллюстрировать, употребив русские аналоги английской структуры (participle совершенного/несовершенного вида).

We saw Helen *enter* the room. (Мы увидели, что/как Елена вошла в комнату.)
We saw Helen *entering* the room. (Мы видели, что/как Елена выходит в комнату.)

- 5 Read the text "Pets" and find in it sentences with the complex object. Read them out and say what they mean in Russian.

Pets



A lot of teenagers keep pets at home. Some of them are very common. Duncan's pet is a budgie. Its name is Whipper the Budgie. Duncan likes his bird very much. He often watches it flying around the

house. Duncan always laughs when he sees Whipper dance in front of the mirror. One morning when Duncan was still asleep he felt Whipper's beak touch his lips and heard his bird say loudly "Hello". Later Duncan noticed Whipper say "Goodbye". Now there are several words in Whipper's vocabulary. Some people buy dangerous animals as pets; crocodiles for example. In Florida you can see a young man walking a crocodile! In Canada one family keeps a buffalo as a pet. They call him Buffalo Bailey and love to watch it running on the farm ground. Julia Lloyd has a pet that can change the colour of its skin. Have



you ever heard of such animals? They are chameleons [kə'miʃənz]. They are very beautiful but they are not easy pets. Julia often watches her pet changing the colour of its skin and climbing the tree in its big cage. Have you got any pets at home? What are they like? Do you think that any animal can make a good pet?



- 4 Complete the sentences with the right forms of the infinitive.

1) I have never seen my favourite team (to lose/lose) a game.
2) We expect the film (to finish/finish) by 9 o'clock.
3) He'd love his friends (to come/come) over and see him in the evening.
4) They watched the car (to race/race) along the street and (to disappear/disappear) round the corner.
5) No one has ever heard Peter (to use/use) bad language.
6) Kate doesn't expect anyone (to help/help) her choose her future career.
7) Does anybody want me (to repeat/repeat) the rule again?
8) Only few of us noticed Mary (to get/get) out of the house quietly and disappear in the dark.
9) Suddenly I felt something cold (to touch/touch) my hand.
10) Would you like me (to bring/bring) you a cold drink?
11) The whole class heard Jane (to recite/recite) her favourite poem at the Russian literature lesson.

- 5 Complete the sentences. Use the infinitive or participle of the verbs in brackets. In some cases both are possible.

Examples: a) We saw James (have) the room and (shut) the door behind him. We saw James leave the room and shut the door behind him.
b) When I (saw) Nina (dance) I couldn't believe my eyes — so beautiful it was. When I saw Nina dancing I couldn't believe my eyes — so beautiful it was.

1) For some time the children watched the birds (fly) in circles above their house.
2) No one noticed the big car (drive) past the front door.
3) The boy felt someone (take) him by the hand.
4) In spring people can hear birds (sing) in parks and gardens.
5) All that time we watched our city (grow).
6) Did you see Margo (win) the one hundred metre race?
7) In my dream I saw myself (climb) a high mountain.
8) Everyone likes to hear this talented actor (sing) his own songs.
9) We loved to sit at the fireplace and watch wood (burn) in it.
10) As soon as I opened the door I felt a cold strong wind (blow) in my face. I immediately closed the door again.

- 4 Look at the pictures and say what Andy saw and heard from his tree house one evening. Use the complex object where you can.

Example: One evening Andy was playing in his tree house when he heard his mother call him.



1) — Andy, it's dinner time.
Come down.
— I'm coming, mother.



2) — Oh, hell!



3) — He needs my help.



2) — Wow!



4) Bang! Bang! Bang!



5) — Start the camera! Action!

- 5 Read the text "Teens and Parents" and complete it with the fragments (a-g) from the box. There is one extra fragment.

- a) kids to listen to
b) the most irritating thing about their kids
c) isolated from their teenagers
d) very positive
e) about their parents' clothes
f) showed their love
g) by the BBC

Teens and Parents

According to a recent survey ⁽¹⁾, 22% of teens in the UK want their parents to give them more freedom. A lot of teens say they don't like their parents' bad moods, and many parents say ⁽²⁾ is their bad mood. However, the survey showed there was a lot that teens loved about their parents:

32% of teens said they liked the way their parents ⁽³⁾ for them. 51% of teens said they liked their parents' sense of humour.

Sadly, 28% of teens said they were not happy ⁽⁴⁾.

27% of parents thought their kids spent too much money.

10% of parents feel ⁽⁵⁾.

10% of parents would like their ⁽⁶⁾ them more.

- 6 Look through the text "Teens and Parents" again and think over these:

- 1) if you like the way your parents show their love for you
- 2) if you suffer from their bad moods and they suffer from yours
- 3) if they think you spend too much money
- 4) if you like the way your parents dress
- 5) if you like your parents' sense of humour
- 6) if you always listen to what your parents say and why
- 7) if you feel isolated from your parents

Do It on Your Own

- 7 Put the sentences in each pair into one.

Example: The snowflakes were slowly falling on the ground. Margo saw it. Margo saw the snowflakes slowly falling on the ground.

- 1) Something fell on the kitchen floor. James heard it. 2) The boy disappeared in the crowd. Nobody noticed it. 3) The fish were

happily swimming in the bowl. The children watched it. 4) The car stopped at the traffic lights. The policeman saw it. 5) The television screen suddenly went dark. We saw it. 6) Something hot touched the man's skin. He felt it. 7) Someone in the hall sang along. The singers on the stage heard it. 8) The book fell on the floor. The whole class heard it. 9) A cold raindrop fell on her face. Julia felt it. 10) One of the children quietly left the room. The teacher noticed it.

12 Express it in English.

1) Мы видели, что ракетка взлетела в небо. 2) Маленькая девочка наблюдала за тем, как самолет летел по небу. 3) Я заметила, что Анна заснула. 4) Я услышал, что мима играет на пианино в соседней комнате. 5) Ты когда-нибудь слышал, как поет океан? 6) Джон почувствовал, что сестра взяла его за руку (to take sb by hand). 7) Роберт наблюдал за тем, как лодка исчезала вдаль (in the distance). Вскоре он увидел, что она исчезла. 8) Мы заметили, что Кейт вышла из дома одна.

Section Four

Do It Together

1 Kels is an international music star. Listen to the interview in which Kels speaks about her teenage years. (58) and say which of the statements below are true and false.

Fact File

Full Name: Kels Rogers.
Birthday: 21 August 1980.
Birth place: Harlem, New York City, USA.
CDs: 1999 Kaleidoscope, 2001 Wonderland, 2003 Tasty.
Career: She changes her music style with each new CD and she tours with many different types of musicians.
Family: Her Puerto Rican and Chinese mother is a fashion designer. Her black father died some years ago. She has three sisters, one younger and two older.



2 Say what these people felt, saw, watched, noticed, heard. Describe the situations using the complex object.

Example: Jane and Jim, her little brother, were walking along the street. Suddenly a big black dog ran from behind the corner. Jim got frightened and took Jane by the hand. Jane and Jim saw a big black dog run from behind the corner. Jane felt Jim take her by the hand.

- 1) Peter was in the park. He sat on a bench looking at a small bird. The bird was building a nest.
- 2) Robin got out of the car and saw his friend Max. Max was leaving their office.
- 3) Alice arrived at her music school at nine. The windows were open. The classes had begun. She could hear the students' voices. They were singing.
- 4) Boris was at the stadium. His favourite football team were playing. The score was 3:1 in their favour.
- 5) Sarah hurt her leg and began crying. She saw her neighbour Lucy. Lucy came to Sarah and touched her leg gently. "Does it hurt, dear?" she asked.
- 6) Dan was late. He opened the door and saw his friends. They were preparing for the party. Dan smiled at Ann. She was decorating the room. The television was on. Some pop star was singing.



Focus on Grammar

1. В тех случаях, когда в структуре complex object после глаголов feel, hear, see, watch, notice используется несколько глаголов для обозначения последовательных действий (действий, происходящих одно за другим), в составе сложного дополнения употребляется только infinitive без частицы to.

1 saw him stand up, come up to the window and open it.

2. Сложное дополнение не используется после глаголов see и hear, если бы в предложении приобретало переносное значение «знать, понимать» и «слышать». В этих случаях после них употребляются придаточные предложения.

I hear that Bob has passed his first exam.

I see that this is a very difficult problem.

- in their favour — в их пользу
- exactly [exactly] — совершенно

3 Some of these sentences have mistakes. Correct them.

- 1) My mum expects me to become a doctor. 2) I want my mum think more about my problems. 3) I see my mother often not understand me. 4) At nine o'clock every morning we see Ms Temple entering our school yard. 5) Linda watched her brother stopping riding on his bike, getting off it and moving to the cottage. 6) I felt my mother kiss me good night. 7) They hear their parents leaving for St. Petersburg. 8) I saw my little brother entering the classroom. 9) I hear him to make a very successful career. 10) I would like my teacher give fewer tasks.

4 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (59), and repeat

A.

preserve [pə'zɜ:v] — сохранять
 deed [di:d] — дело, поступок
 claim [kleɪm] — 1) заявить
 права на что-то, потребовать;
 2) утверждать, заявлять
 likely [laɪkli] — вероятно
 unemployed [ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd] — безработный

tear [tiə] — рвать
 date [deɪt] — встречаться с кем-то, назначать свидание
 stupid ['stju:pɪd] — глупый
 worry ['wʌri] — беспокоиться, волноваться
 citizen ['sɪtɪzən] — гражданин
 exist [ɪg'zɪst] — существовать
 allow [ə'laʊ] — разрешать, позволять

B.

preserve (v): to preserve customs, to preserve food, to preserve sth for future generations. The ancient Egyptians knew how to preserve dead bodies. I think these interesting customs should be preserved. We put food into the fridge to preserve it.
 deed (n): a good deed, heroic deeds. John promises to do one good deed every day. You did a good deed by helping the old man.
 claim (v): to claim something, to claim falsely. Did anyone claim the lost umbrella? Nigel claimed that he had done all the work without help.
 likely (adj): most likely, very likely. Tony will most likely win the competition. To be likely/unlikely to do something. He is likely to win the game. They are unlikely to arrive that early.
 unemployed (adj): unemployed men, unemployed people. The factory closed and there were a lot of unemployed people in the area.

tear (to, torn) (v): to tear a dress on a nail, to tear a page out of one's notebook, to tear something up. Andrew tore his shirt when he was climbing over the fence. I tore the envelope open. Bob has torn off a sheet from the pad of paper.

date (v): to date somebody. I dated Caroline during last summer. Jane and me have been dating for half a year.

stupid (adj): to feel stupid, to look stupid, a very stupid thing to do. I felt really stupid when I understood what had happened. That was just a stupid plan.

worry (v): to worry somebody; to worry about somebody/something. Stop worrying, dad, we'll be fine. Don't worry the driver with unnecessary questions.

citizen (n): to be a good citizen. We should teach our students to be good citizens.

exist (v): to exist somewhere. Does life exist on this planet? A person cannot exist for long without water.

allow (v): to allow doing sth, to be allowed to do something. Do they allow smoking in the cinema? — Certainly not. Will you allow me to use your bicycle? Jack is not allowed to go to the forest alone.

1 Complete the situations by making a conclusion¹.

Example: The train usually arrives at 9 o'clock. Now it is five minutes to nine and we neither see nor hear it. — The train is likely to be late. (The train is not likely (unlikely) to be on time.)

- 1) Some time ago the sun was shining and now the sky is covered with heavy dark clouds.
- 2) Steve is leaving school this year. He is working very hard as he wants to become a doctor.
- 3) Mary doesn't look well today and she says she has a headache.
- 4) I've been calling Andrew the whole evening but nobody takes the phone.
- 5) The new school is nearly ready. There is still some time before the 1st of September.
- 6) The whole family have gathered in front of the television. They all support the same football team.
- 7) George enjoys acting, and he is very good at it. He is thinking of an acting career.

¹ a conclusion [kən'klu:ʒən] — заключение

- 8) Fred is very busy at the moment. He is helping his old aunt who is very ill. I don't think we'll see him this summer.
 9) The shop closes at eight. It is five to eight now. What shall we do about the food?
 10) The runners are coming to the finishing line. Susan is well ahead of the other athletes.

6 Express the same in a different way. Use the new words.

- 1) I want people who belong to Russia to be proud of their country.
 2) When the letter was nearly finished, Margaret pulled it into small pieces and started anew.
 3) Some people may think that Denis is a very slow thinker but in fact he is not. I would even say that he's quite clever.
 4) Phil's bad health makes his parents feel that something wrong is going to happen.
 5) To keep the cut flowers unchanged we can put them in a dark cool place.
 6) Julia's parents say that she can stay up late and watch late-night films.
 7) On our planet there were several civilizations.
 8) Kate goes out with a very nice boy. They seem to be very happy together.
 9) Jeremy hasn't had a job for a long time. I hope he'll find one soon.
 10) Pauline assured us that she was the best pupil in her class.
 11) It looks like the weather will be wonderful today.
 12) Helping the children was a very good thing to do.



Focus on Grammar

В настоящее время в рамках словообразовательного процесса — конверсии — весьма популярным является образование новых слов по модели:

Adj — **N**, когда на базе имени прилагательного образуются имена существительные, которые употребляются с определенными артиклем и обозначают группы людей. Например:

Adjective

old

young

rich

Noun

the old [старые (старой), стариков]

the young [молодые (молодой), молодежь]

the rich [богатые (богатой), богатых]

poor

deaf

blind

dumb

unemployed

the poor [бедные (бедной), бедных]

the deaf [глухие (глухой), глухих]

the blind [слепые (слепой), слепых]

the dumb [тупые (тупой), тупых]

the unemployed [безработные (безработной), безработных]

these picture books are for young readers
 Jack is my old friend

adjectives

the old and the young do not always understand each other.

the rich are getting richer and the poor are getting poorer

how much money do the unemployed get in this country?

nouns

7 Use the th where necessary to complete the sentences.

- 1) ... th blind can learn to read with the help of their fingers. 2) She became ... th blind at the age of ten. 3) She looked ... th young enough to be his daughter. 4) This government has helped ... th rich but has done nothing to help ... th poor. 5) A special school for ... th deaf is being built in our town. 6) Mr Morrison asked us to speak more loudly, as he was rather ... th deaf. 7) ... th deaf, ... th blind and ... th dumb are the categories of people who may have problems finding a job. 8) This part of the city is ... th old and very beautiful. 9) What do we call people who can't hear: do we call them ... th deaf or ... th dumb? 10) Alice is too ... th young to drive a car. 11) The number of ... th unemployed people is rising all the time.

8 A Read the text and answer the questions: a) What is BNP's idea about immigrants? b) Why is it wrong?

Racism in Britain

Twenty years ago there used to be not so many blacks and Asians in local government or on TV as newscasters; now it is very common. The culture of these people is becoming more and more part of British lifestyle. But can we say that racism has become a fact of the past or does it still exist?

The British National Party (BNP), an extreme right-wing group is supported by about 4% of the population. The leaders of the party say that they are a respectable party wanting to "preserve the future of Britain by sending ethnic minorities back to the country they come from." But their deeds speak louder than their words. The BNP's members take part in attacks on Asian people.

They and their supporters (of which there are about 20,000) claim that the blacks and Asians are stealing their jobs. But black and Asian people are two and a half times more likely to be unemployed than whites. At the same time, there are a lot of Asians and blacks in medicine and law. The only way they are stealing white people's jobs is by getting better qualifications. As the British law allows all British citizens to get their education free, blacks and Asians get these job places in a fair competition with whites.

Many blacks and Asians were invited to Britain after the Second World War and in the 1950s and 60s when Britain needed working hands. Immigrants were prepared to do the jobs white people did not want.

The BNP's idea of repatriation sounds especially strange if you remember that blacks and Asians are just as British as any other citizens of the country because most of them were born in the UK. It is natural that this problem worries British teenagers and they feel strongly about it. This is what some black and Asian teens said about racism.

D h a r a: I feel half British, half Indian, torn between the two cultures.

J a k k i r a n: I don't think I could ever live in India. I can't speak Punjabi¹ very well and I feel like an outsider there.

S h e r i d a n: About ten years ago people threw bottles at my uncle because he was dating a white girl.

D u n j h a t e r: I don't think the BNP will get into power because Britain is so multi-cultural and I don't think the population will support them. They don't make me angry. I just think they're stupid.

A. Find in the text "Racism in Britain" English equivalents for the following:

На телевидении в качестве ведущих новостей; британский рабочий человек; крайнее правая группировка; этнические меньшинства; честное соревнование; идея возвращения (их) на родину; острого это чувствуют; а чувствую себя там чужим; многонациональное государство.

C. Listen to the same text, (60), and learn to read it aloud.

¹ Punjabi [pʊ'dʒi:ʃ] — язык пенджабцев



Did You Know That...?

Race and ethnic groups are one of the most sensitive topics. Nowadays more and more groups of people prefer to be called by the name they have chosen themselves. For example, many Americans whose families originally came from Africa prefer to be called African-American. But there are others who prefer to be called black because they see themselves as American, not African. At any given time members of a certain racial or ethnic group prefer different terms and the words that were used before become outdated. For example, in books and articles that were written in the middle of the last century you may see expressions like *Oriental* or *Chinaman*. Be careful not to use old-fashioned and offensive words like these. Use more acceptable terms, such as *Chinese people*.

B. Read the text "Racism in Britain" again and answer these questions.

- 1) When did Britain begin to become a multi-cultural country and why?
- 2) Why is it difficult to say that racism in Britain is dead?
- 3) What does the BNP work for? Do they use only peaceful methods in their activity?
- 4) What are the BNP's arguments when they say that blacks and Asians should be repatriated?
- 5) What is the situation in the labour market¹ in Britain?
- 6) Can you understand the teenagers who speak about racism and have problems because of their nationality?
- 7) Do you think it is good or bad for a society to be multi-cultural?
- 8) What is the situation like in your country?
- 9) Do you think racism exists in your society?

A. Find in the text "Racism in Britain" a sentence with structure *used to do sth* and remember what it means.

B. Say the same in a different way.

- E s a m p l e:** Some time ago I went to the British Museum almost every Saturday. Now I have no time for it.
Some time ago I used to go to the British Museum almost every Saturday. Now I have no time for it.

1) When James was younger he spent hours fishing in the lake. He doesn't do it any more.

¹ labour market — рынок труда

- 2) A couple of years ago I didn't do any sport. Now I do a lot of jogging which keeps me fit.
 3) I know that now you keep no pets. Did you do it in your childhood?
 4) In olden days¹ people travelled rather slowly. Now we have fast trains and jet planes.
 5) Diana never thought about serious problems when she was in her teen years. Now she has become very different.
 6) When Caroline was a child she hated even the smell of coffee. Now she drinks a lot of it.
 7) When we were young we spent a lot of time together. Unfortunately, we don't see a lot of each other now.
 8) It seems that Jane and Colin don't like each other very much. Did they date when they were younger?
 9) Peter was a quiet and friendly boy at school. What's happened to him?
 10) Kathy played a lot of tennis when I first met her. Now she prefers golf.

- 11** Look at the pictures and say what the grandfather told his grandchildren about his young years. What questions did they ask him?



Example: Did you use to have a lot of friends? — I used to have a lot of friends.

¹ In olden days = long time ago

Do It on Your Own

1 Cross out the odd word.

- 1) preserve, claim, deed, exist, tear
 2) allow, claim, tear, date, citizen
 3) date, claim, may, likely, faint
 4) preserve, citizen, likely, worry, stupid
 5) unemployed, unsuccessful, understand, unhappy, unlikely

2 Express the same in English using complex object.

- 1) Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы присоединились к нам. 2) Ты слышишь, что звонит телефон? 3) Я почувствовал, что моя маленькая племянница взяла меня за руку. 4) Я увидела, как Эндру открыл сумку и достал из нее бумаги (документы). 5) Мы заметили, что Алина начала что-то писать. 6) Мои родители не хотят, чтобы я стал пением. 7) Мы наблюдали за тем, как дитя играло в море. 8) Я никогда не видел, как он танцует.

Section Five

Do It Together

- 1** You will hear what five young people say about some famous teen hangouts¹ in the world. **2** Match what each teenager says (1–5) with the statements (a–f). There is one extra statement.



1. Charlie 2. Tony 3. Martin 4. Jill 5. Sue

- a) It is a fantastic place to visit. You can shop all day and dance all night.
 b) I prefer to spend the end of December there. Together with my friends we have the most unusual celebration of the important Christian Festival.

¹ hangout ['hæŋaʊt] — место встречи, общение

- c) It is a good magnet for teens. There are always young people from all over the world there and they can meet in various clubs.
 d) I like this cool¹ place and have very good memories of Thailand, especially when I look at the things I bought there.
 e) You can meet many talented people from many cultures there. It is an exciting place where people can say what they think about life and society.
 f) You should wear your wildest and most unusual dress if you're going there.

- 2 Read the text "Why Teens Can't Stop Gambling" and complete it putting the verbs in brackets in the right form.



Why Teens Can't Stop Gambling

Seventy-five per cent (75%) of British teenagers gamble. In the USA, the figure is even higher — eighty-seven per cent (87%). One journalist says he heard Professor Griffiths (to say¹) there will be more teen gamblers soon. Professor Griffiths is Europe's only professor of gambling studies. He wants everybody (to understand²) that gambling is a form of addiction and teen gamblers are addicts. The professor watches young people (to buy³) lottery tickets. He says 87% of British teens play the National Lottery. He notices many teens (to use⁴) Internet gambling. Young people gamble at night and feel tired and asleep at school. Even if they

¹ cool [kʊl] — приятный, интересный

² to gamble — играть в азартные игры

lose money, they can't stop gambling. Nowadays you can see teenagers (to gamble⁵) in pubs, cafés, amusement arcades⁶.

- 3 A It's a fact that you've got one in fourteen million chance of winning the lottery. Nevertheless people of all ages gamble a lot and each year the number of teen gamblers grows. Read Jerry's story and say if such a situation is typical of Russia.

"I started betting on American football. I was gambling on all the sports. I did well at first. I couldn't wait to get the sports page every day so I could see who to bet on. Then I discovered Internet gambling. I stayed up all night and I felt asleep at school. I began losing money, but I still couldn't stop gambling. I used my parents' credit cards to gamble online. When the credit card companies started calling the house, I was thousands of dollars in debt¹. I knew that 16- and 17-year olds, who gambled were more likely to become addicted to drugs² and alcohol but I couldn't stop gambling."

4 Answer the questions.

- 1) Why is gambling dangerous?
- 2) Why do young people gamble so much?
- 3) How can teenagers become gamblers?

- 5 Think what can be done to stop or limit teen gambling. Read the statements, compare them with your answer. Put the statements in the order of importance.

- 1) Fruit machines⁴ shouldn't be situated in pubs, cafés, shops, etc — places where they are easy to find.
- 2) Amusement arcades should be built far from schools or youth centres, maybe even far from the centres where people live.
- 3) Teenagers under 16 or even 17 mustn't take part in gambling. So their age should be checked.
- 4) There shouldn't be so many websites that offer gambling games.
- 5) Gamblers shouldn't be allowed to bet money using credit cards.
- 6) Gamblers should be able to have professional help to stop gambling.

⁴ an amusement arcade — игровая автоматов

⁵ a debt [deɪt] — долг

⁶ drugs — наркотики

⁷ a fruit machine — игровой автомат

7) Teenagers at school should get information how dangerous gambling is, that it is a form of addiction. Teachers should explain to pupils how powerful gambling hormones are and how they work.

8) Laws against gambling should be strict.

Focus on Grammar

1. После глагола *to let* («разрешать, позволять») и *to make* в значении «заставлять» в конструкции complex object используется только инфинитив обывательного глагола без частицы *to*.

My mother doesn't let me go there alone. Our English teacher makes us work very hard.

2. Однако в пассивных структурах с глаголом *make* частица *to* употребляется.

The children were made to go to bed at nine. (Детей заставили лечь спать в девять.)

3. Глагол *to let* в пассивных структурах не используется вовсе. Вместо него употребляется глагол *to allow*.

My parents let us watch this film. (Мои родители позволили нам посмотреть этот фильм.)

We were allowed to watch this film. (Нам позволили посмотреть этот фильм.)

1. Complete the sentences. Use *to* where necessary.

1) We have never seen Iris ... read thick novels. 2) Jane is not allowed ... watch soap operas late at night. 3) We would like to go camping but I'm afraid our parents wouldn't let us ... do it. 4) Sue never lets her children ... eat sweets. She thinks it is bad for their teeth. 5) We were made ... finish our translation at three. 6) Thank you for letting me ... borrow your car. 7) Make John ... prepare the papers by six o'clock. 8) I want you ... publish Peter's article in your magazine. 9) I've heard him ... offer his help to Andrew.

2. Paraphrase these sentences. Use the verbs in the passive voice.

1) Roger meant to make his brothers sit still. 2) My mother never lets me leave home after ten. 3) How did you make him listen to you? 4) The farmer lets me live in a small caravan behind his house. 5) I'll make Andrew pay the money back. 6) Just imagine! They made the old lady wait more than an hour. 7) My granny lets

me look through her old photographs. 8) My parents never let me go to the river alone. 9) She didn't let me see what she was doing. 10) I made little Ann smile.

Focus on Vocabulary

Phrasal verb *to get*

1) *to get along/on* — уживаться, ладить с кем-то.
Richard and his sister don't really get along.

2) *to get away* — убежать, исчезнуть, уехать.
My dog got away from me in the park.

3) *to get on* — ехать на автобусе/поезде, автобус и т. д.
We got on his bike and rode away.

4) *to get off* — сойти с автобуса/поезда, автобус и т. д.
We got off the bus near Buckingham Palace.

5) *to get into the car* — войти в машину.
The old lady got into the car with difficulty.

6) *to get out of the car* — выйти из машины.
They got out of the car and went along the street.

7) *to get over* — справиться с чем-то, преодолеть что-то.
He is very ill and can't get over his illness yet.

3. Complete the sentences using the missing words: *along, away, over, to, into, on, off*.

1) My dog and my cat get ... very well with each other. 2) The thieves got ... with our money. 3) Does she get ... with all her classmates? 4) Your news is a real shock and we can't get ... it. 5) Don't allow him to get ... with my bike. 6) Get ... the bus near London Bridge and go as far as Trafalgar Square. 7) Get ... the car, if you want to drive. 8) (On the bus) Excuse me, I'm going to Red Square. Where should I get ... the bus? 9) I hope she will be able to get ... all the difficulties. 10) How are you getting ... with your neighbours?

4. Read the text and say the names of which movements and organizations were new to you.

Young People's Movements and Organizations

The term "Young People's Movement" is so wide that it includes all kinds of young people's associations [экскурсия] from *Punk Rockers*, *Hippies* and *Goths* to the *Young Conservatives* in Britain and *Komsomol* in Soviet Russia.

The world's first voluntary¹ youth organization was the *Boys' Brigade* [brɪ'geɪd], founded in Glasgow, Scotland, in 1883 by William Alexander Smith. This idea was to give the boys religious education and teach them to be disciplined and well-mannered.

In England Major-General Robert Baden-Powell founded the *Boy Scouts* movement in 1908. Like the *Boys' Brigade*, the *Scout* movement has spread around the world. A sister organization to



the *Scouts*, the *Girl Guide Association*, founded in 1910, also has a lot of members in different countries. These organizations train boys and girls in various useful skills, such as lighting a fire, cooking, fishing and help children to develop their character.

Very often young people's movements are political in nature. In the 1930s there existed *Fascist* ['fæʃɪst] organizations for young people in Mussolini's Italy and Hitler's Germany. In Britain some young people joined the *Blackshirts*.

Soviet Russia had Young Communist groups; *Oktobrists*, *Pioneers* and *Komsomol*, which were founded to give young people political education and teach them patriotism.



The second half of the 20th century saw a number of youth cults [kʌlt] and cultures such as the *Rockers*, associated with motorcycles, rock-and-roll music and clothes made of leather². The *Hippies* of the late 1960s experimented with drugs, lived in communities, grew their hair long and were interested in radical politics.



The *Goths* followed a fashion of the late 1980s and early 1990s for white faces and black and purple clothes.

Skinheads are associated with racism. They appeared in the 1960s. *Skinheads*, mostly boys and young men, shave their hair off or cut it very short. They wear heavy boots and earrings. *Skinheads* often use violence and terrorize people. Some of the youth cults have survived till nowadays.

1 Listen to the same text, [52], then read it aloud and complete the statements about it.

- 1) The term "Young People's Movements" includes ...
 - a) only political teen organizations of all types
 - b) various groups of young people
 - c) religious associations of young people
- 2) The world's first youth² organization was founded ...
 - a) last century
 - b) last but one century
 - c) last but two centuries
- 3) The members of the *Boys' Brigade* were ...
 - a) trained to believe in God
 - b) taught to obey everybody
 - c) taught to become patriots

¹ voluntary ['vɒləntəri] — добровольный

² leather ['leðə] — кожа, кожаный

³ Goth [gɒt] — гот; неоязычник

4) *The Boy Scouts* movement was founded ...

- a) in the late 19th century
- b) in the early 20th century
- c) in the mid 20th century

5) Many Scout organizations all over Europe ...

- a) give their members a good education
- b) teach them to do jobs about the house
- c) prepare them for the future

6) ... is not a political organization.

- a) *The Blackshirts*
- b) *Komsomol*
- c) *The Goths*

7) ... is an organization the members of which are characterized by racist ('racist') behaviour.

- a) *Skinheads*
- b) *The Rockers*
- c) *The Hippies*

8) You and your friends want to find out more about young people's movements and organizations. Discuss with them the history of which organizations you would like to study. Come to an agreement.

- the Boys' Brigade
- the Young Pioneers
- the Boy Scouts
- the Komsomol Organization
- the Girl Guides

9) Answer the questions.

- 1) Why do you think young people like to join cults, groups and organizations?
- 2) How do young people usually demonstrate that they belong to a certain organization?
- 3) Is there any organization, a cult or a culture that you find interesting or good for yourself? What is it? Why are you interested in it?
- 4) Are there any youth organizations, cults or cultures which you will never join? Why not?
- 5) Why is it necessary to think hard before you join a movement or an organization?

Focus on Vocabulary

Обратите внимание на структурные различия в употреблении двух стрел:

to be used to doing something иметь привычку делать что-то привыкший делать что-то	used to do something иметь обыкновение делать что-то в прошлом, что не делается сейчас
1) I am used to getting up late.	1) I used to get up late when I was on holiday (but now I get up early).
2) He is used to dining at six o'clock p. m.	2) He used to dine at six o'clock p. m. (he doesn't do it any more).
3) They are used to playing hockey in winter.	3) They used to play hockey when they were younger (they don't play hockey these days).

10) Choose the right form and complete the sentences.

- 1) Jane doesn't live here now but she (used to/is used to doing it).
- 2) I (used to go/am used to going) to the cinema a lot but I never get the time now.
- 3) Alec is a vegetarian. He (used to eat/is used to eating) a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- 4) Oh! It is one in the morning. I (didn't use to go/am not used to going) to bed so late. I've never done it before.
- 5) My grandmother (used to dance/is used to dancing) a lot when she was young.
- 6) John (used to walk/is used to walking) because he hasn't got a car.
- 7) The boys (used to swim/are used to swimming) in cold water when they lived in the mountains.
- 8) My aunt (used to live/is used to living) with no one around. Her husband died fifteen years ago and she has no children.
- 9) Diana (used to write/is used to writing) everything about her pet in the diary.
- 10) We (used to read/are used to reading) books aloud to our children when they were young.

Do It on Your Own

1) Express the same in English.

- 1) Моя мама не позволяет мне носить короткую юбку. 2) Мне не разрешают работать на этом компьютере. 3) Так жарко! Хотелось мне пойти на реку поплавать (to have a swim). 4) Я за-

сталло тебе сказать мне правду. 5) нас заставили вымыть пол. 6) Мой старший брат не разрешает мне кататься на своем велосипеде. 7) Детям разрешали кушать мороженое. 8) Бабушка заставляла выучить стихотворение наизусть.

- 12 4. Write five sentences about what you used to do when you were younger and don't do nowadays.

5. Write five sentences about what you or the members of your family are used to doing.

Section Six. Consolidation Class

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to what six teenagers from Belgium think about immigration in their country. (43) (43). Say who

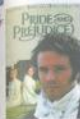
- a) thinks immigrants have the wrong idea of Western life
b) worries about the fact there are not enough jobs for everyone
c) thinks of the world as one big country
d) says a few immigrants sometimes bring problems
e) has a relation who came from abroad
f) thinks immigrants should adapt to their host country¹



1. Maria 2. Melaine 3. Luke 4. Brian 5. Simon 6. Andy

¹ host [hɒst] country — принимающая страна; страна, в которую иммигрируют

- 5 Complete the text with the right form given after it.



Top Cool Reads for Teens

"Pride and Prejudice"¹ by Jane Austen

If you liked the film with Keira Knightley, now try the book. "Pride and Prejudice" is the story of Mr and Mrs Bennett, (1) daughters and their romantic relationships. In the film made after it Keira played the character of Elizabeth Bennett, (2) was Jane Austen's most (3) character from her own books.

"Ark² Angel" by Anthony Horowitz

Alex Rider is not an ordinary teenager, (4) a 15-year-old spy. The author Anthony Horowitz says that when he was writing the book he was thinking about James Bond, "I started (5) the books because I thought the actors in the James Bond films were all (6). To be really "cool", I thought Bond should be (7) teenager."

"Chronicles of Narnia: The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe"³ by C. S. Lewis

Everybody's reading (8) books, so why shouldn't you? After "Harry Potter" and the "Lord of the Rings" this is the (9) fanta-

¹ "Pride and Prejudice" — «Гордость и предубеждение» (название знаменитого романа английской писательницы Джейн Остин (1775—1817).

² an ark — корабль

³ «Хроники Нарнии: лев, ведьма и платяной шкаф» — произведения К. С. Льюиса (1898—1963), знаменитого английского писателя и христианского миссионера

sy book that has been made into a film. It's about a magical wand, robe that can take you to a secret land. So, if you haven't read the Narnia books, do it now. They will make you ⁽¹⁸⁾ your imagination.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1) a) five there | b) five their | c) their five |
| 2) a) who | b) which | c) whose |
| 3) a) loveliest | b) loving | c) loved |
| 4) a) His | b) He's | c) Him |
| 5) a) write | b) wrote | c) writing |
| 6) a) too old | b) old enough | c) older |
| 7) a) — | b) a | c) the |
| 8) a) children's | b) childrens' | c) children |
| 9) a) late | b) later | c) latest |
| 10) a) use | b) to use | c) using |

Read the text given below and make it complete with the words **must** from the forms on the right.



Hoodies¹

Now ⁽¹⁹⁾ newspapers are full of stories about bad teen ⁽²⁰⁾. But how serious are these problems? Are they really ⁽²¹⁾? Nowadays it is ⁽²²⁾ to wear hoodies. But some people say they feel ⁽²³⁾ when they see groups of teenagers wearing them. You can't see people's faces, if they wear hoodies, so if they do something bad, the police may have some ⁽²⁴⁾ to see them. Last year a ⁽²⁵⁾ centre near London stopped kids from wearing

Britain
behave
importance
fashion
safe

difficult
shop

¹ a hoodie — куртка или водолазка с капюшоном

hoodies. Many teenagers' ⁽²⁶⁾ aren't happy about this. One of them says, "Hoodies are what ⁽²⁷⁾ wears." They sell them in the centre, so how can they stop people from wearing them. shop every

Are you happy with your body? Answer these questions to find out.

- When you look in the mirror, do you feel happy with what you see?
 - Yes, I usually feel pleased with what I look like.
 - Sometimes.
 - No, never. I always think I look terrible.
- How many different clothes do you try on² before you decide what to wear?
 - I wear the first thing I put on.
 - 2–3.
 - I try on so many that I can't remember.
- What do you hate most?
 - Examinations.
 - A bad haircut.
 - Going shopping for clothes.
- How do you feel about someone taking your photo?
 - I love it!
 - I like it most of the time.
 - I hate it.
- A friend tells you that you're looking good. What do you say to him/her?
 - Thanks very much. I feel good today.
 - Thanks but I need to loose some weight.
 - Are you blind?

If your results are mostly

As: You have a very good body image. You are comfortable with your body. Well done!

B: Most days you have a good body image but on the days when you don't, try to remember the things that are really good in life: good health, good friends, a loving family and having fun.

² to try on — примерять одежду, обувать

Cu: You have a very bad body image. You are always thinking about how to make your body look better. You should stop thinking about it and find friends who are more interested in personality than looks.

- 5 Teens from different countries were asked the same questions. Read their answers and then answer the same questions.



What is it really like being 15?

1) What are the biggest worries for 15-year-olds in your country?
Kevin from Bern, Switzerland:
Most of my friends are afraid to get bad results at examinations or fail them.

Filippo from Athens, Greece:
School and exams.

You:

2) What do you want to do in five years' time?

Kevin:

I want to be at university.

Filippo:

I'd like to be at university and have my own car.

You:

3) What are the best/worst things about your country?

Kevin:

The best is the political system.

Filippo:

Some of the best things about Greece are its mild climate, beautiful beaches and nature. The worst things are the unemployment, the economy and immigration.

Robbie from Antananarivo, Madagascar:
I feel very safe in my country, there's very little crime. The worst thing is that it's a bit too quiet — there's nothing to do.

You:

4) What are the best and worst things about being 15?

James from Glasgow, Scotland, UK:

I like having more independence¹. My parents let me do more. I decide when I go to bed if I manage to get up on time in the morning. I don't like exams.

Robbie:

It's good, because people give you more independence. They think you're not a kid any longer. But you are more responsible. Parents expect you to behave well.

You:

5) What are you most afraid of?

Kevin:

Terrorism.

Filippo:

Unemployment and war. But my biggest worry is the death of my relatives and friends.

Robbie:

World war.

You:

- 6 Read the text "Teens' problems" and match its paragraphs (1–5) with the titles (a–f). There is one extra title.

- a) Teenagers Choose Different Ways to Talk to Their Friends
b) It's Too Easy for Teens to Get Drinks and Cigarettes
c) British Teenagers Have Some Serious Problems
d) Fewer Teenagers Have Only One Person for a Friend
e) Grown-ups See Teens' Problems in the Wrong Way
f) Teenagers are Very Much Afraid of Losing Their Friends

Teens' Problems

1) What do you think the biggest problem of today's teenagers is? What are they like? The facts about teenage life may seem shocking. These are some facts typical of British teenagers:

¹ Independence [ˌɪndɪˈpendəns] — unassistedness.

• 33% of UK teens say they began drinking alcohol at the age of thirteen or younger. British teens drink more alcohol than teens anywhere in Europe.

• Four out of ten teenagers are so ignorant¹ about cooking that they can't even boil/fry an egg.

• One in every four teens smokes.

• 33% of 15-years-old say they have tried drugs.

• 9% of UK teens never read books for pleasure.

• 75% of UK teens have their own television and watch it many hours a day.

• Every one in five UK teens is overweight or obese².

• 64% of 15-years-old girls take less than half an hour's exercise a day.

• More than 5% of pupils leave school with no qualifications for working life.

2) The situation is more or less the same in other European countries. Naturally most parents worry about their teenage children. But if you ask them what the most serious problem is, they will probably answer that it's drugs, but they are wrong.

3) For most young people the most important problem is their relationships, especially with their friends. Nothing, it seems, can be worse than falling out³ with your best friends. Teenagers discuss any problem they may have with their friends. If they fall out with their friends, then there is no one to speak to. This can seriously influence their mental health.

4) Today teenagers think more and more about friends. It is interesting that young people nowadays have larger groups of friends than twenty or thirty years ago. Having a group of people hang out and socialize⁴ with seems safer than having one exclusive relationship with one person, especially if something goes wrong. Some teenagers even say that couples are a thing of the past.

5) Communication seems very important to 11–16-year-olds. 82% of them have a mobile phone and spend a lot of money talking with friends. 45% of UK teens regularly surf the net⁵. 80% of teens say they are happy to give out their e-mail address. But

¹ ignorant ['ɪɡnərənt] — невежественный, ничего не знающий

² obese [ə'beɪs] — страдающий ожирением

³ to fall out with sb — поссориться

⁴ to socialise ['səʊʃaɪz] — общаться

⁵ to surf the net — «сёрфинг» в Интернете

many of them don't like to discuss things with their parents. When they are asked such questions as "What's wrong?" or "What did you do at school?" they usually answer "Nothing" or "Whatever"⁶. They spend a lot of time in their rooms because they prefer to be alone.

5 You've read the text about teens' problems in Western countries. Say which of them in your opinion are real teens' problems in our country. Give a 2-minute talk and remember to say

- what a typical situation with drinking, smoking and drug taking in the place where you live is
- if your friends and classmates are more or less prepared for the future life
- what your friends' usual pastimes are
- what your friends' most important home life problems are

6 You would like to know more about somebody you have just met. Ask him/her about

- how many friends he or she has and if they are mostly boys or girls, or both
- what she/he likes about their friends
- if there is anything in their behaviour that he or she dislikes
- what brings them together and makes them good friends



Focus on Social English

Learn to give prohibitions¹ and warnings² in English

Prohibitions

Don't do it.

Whatever you do, don't (go there).

Stop doing it.

You can't do it.

Don't you dare do it. (He *can't* *aren't* *dare*.)

This must not continue. That's my last word.

Make sure it doesn't happen again.

¹ whatever — ад., довольно грубое восклицание, которое часто используется подростками в значении «как же рано, что ты об этом думаешь, а я не думаю это дальше обсуждать»

² prohibition [prə'vɪʃən] — запрет

³ warning ['wɜːnɪŋ] — предупреждение

Warnings

I warn you.../I'm warning you...
 Remember that it's easy to (fall down).
 Remember not to (come home late).
 You can do it, but (you may not like it).
 Mind you (that you may not like it).
 Look out!/Watch out! (dangerous)
 Watch out for (the train).
 I wouldn't do it. (if the risk isn't worth it)

9 Give your reaction to the following situations. Use your social English.

- 1) Your younger brother is using bad language.
- 2) Your best friend has begun to miss classes at school.
- 3) Your other friend is planning to learn to ride a motorbike.
- 4) Your sister forgets to call home when she is late.
- 5) Your dog steals food from the table.
- 6) Your mother is going to touch the hot frying pan.
- 7) Your friend is dating somebody you don't like.
- 8) You see that your father may be late for work.
- 9) One of the steps in the stairs is broken.
- 10) A young child is going to climb a tree.
- 11) Your friends are going to swim in the lake that they have just found in the middle of the forest.
- 12) Your friend has never smoked before and now you see him or her smoking a cigarette.

10 A. Your younger brother is going camping for the first time in his life. What warnings and prohibitions will you give him? The pictures below may give you some ideas.**B Make up and act out a similar dialogue. Mention**

- what to take and what not to take
- how to dress
- what to do and what not to do when you go camping

Do It on Your Own**11 Write a paragraph on what you like and dislike about being a teenager.****12 Complete the dialogues. Use Social English phrases (p. 231–232).**

- 1) Child: Mummy, may I ski down this hill?
 Mother: Yes, dear, but... the hill is high and steep!
- 2) Child: Monkey, monkey! Would you like a banana?
 Zoo keeper: ... It is strictly prohibited!
- 3) Teacher: ... You are not listening to me.
 Pupil: Sorry, I just asked Peter to pass me the textbook.

* steep [sti:p] — steep

- 4) Daughter: I'd like to watch the late-night film tonight. I've heard so much about it.
 Father: ...You have to get up early tomorrow.
 5) Woman: Excuse me. I'm trying to get a ticket from this machine.
 Friendly man: ... I had some problems with it only a minute ago.
 6) Son: I'll be home at about 11 o'clock.
 Parent: ...You know our area isn't very quiet.
 7) Child: I'm so sorry. I only wanted to ride your bike once. I rode into a tree and ... oh, I'm really sorry!
 Child's sister: ... I told you so many times not to take my things.

Section Seven. Creative Writing

Writing Letters

Everybody likes to receive a letter or an e-mail from a friend. A letter tells you that someone was thinking about you. Unlike a telephone call, you can keep a letter and read it again and again. You need to write letters too. Sometimes you want to write a letter to a friend. Sometimes you need to write a thank-you note or an invitation. Sometimes you have to write a business letter to get some information.

Now you will learn to write friendly letters. You will learn the correct form for letters and envelopes. You may soon enjoy writing letters as much as you enjoy receiving them.

Parts of a Friendly Letter

You usually write friendly letters to family members and friends. You write the letters and e-mails to exchange¹ news or just to say *hello*. Friendly letters have five main parts. They are: the heading, the greeting, the body, the closing and the signature². Each part is written in a certain place. Each part has certain rules for capitalization³ and punctuation⁴.

¹ to exchange [di'ɛtʃeɪŋ] — обмениваться [ɒbˌmɪnɪəˈseɪs]

² a signature ['sɪgnətʃə] — подпись

³ capitalization ['kæpɪtəlɪzən] — заглавные и прописные буквы

⁴ punctuation ['pʊŋktʃən] — пунктуация

Look at the letter below, read it and answer the questions after it.

Heading → 43 Hill Road
Newcastle
NE 3889 U
UK
March 31, 2007

Greeting → Dear Ann,

Body → I have great news! I am going to spend the last month of my holidays on my grandparents' farm. You and I will see each other soon and will be able to have a lot of fun together. I am really excited. We will swim in the lake and go boating. Maybe we can ride horses.

Write soon. Let me know how your French is going. See you in August!

Closing → Your friend,

Signature → Julia

- 1) Which part of the letter tells where you are and when you are writing?
- 2) Is it situated in the top right-hand corner or in the top left-hand corner?
- 3) Which line of the heading tells you the name of the city?
- 4) What information is given in the first line of the heading? Which comes first — the house number or the name of the street?
- 5) Is Zip code given before or after the name of the country?
- 6) What is the difference between the English and the Russian way of placing the date?
- 7) Which part of the letter is used to say *hello*? Is it written in the way we write this part of the letter in Russia? Do we use any commas?
- 8) Which part of the letter follows the greeting? Which one is the main part of the letter?
- 9) How many paragraphs are there in the body? Are the first lines of each of them indented?

¹ a comma — запятая

² to be indented — быть отступившим

- 10) Which part of the letter is a way of saying goodbye? Which one gives your handwritten name?
- 11) With what words are the closing and the signature lined up?
- 12) Where do they use commas in the greeting and the closing?



Focus on Writing

1. Запомни, как выглядит типичное обращение

Dear Mr Stone,
Hi, Ben,
Hello, Sue

То, какую подпись ты ставишь в конце письма, зависит от того, насколько близко ты знаешь адресата письма.

Если ты хорошо с ним знакоми, письмо заканчивается именем или даже прозвищем, если нет — следует написать имя и фамилию. Вот образцы возможных завершений письма.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) Four friend, Tom | c) Missing you, Andrew | e) Sincerely (yours),
Tom Robinson |
| b) Love, Betty | d) (Always) yours, Olga | f) Lovingly, Sarah |

2. Обращение к адресату письма всегда пишется на линии с левой стороны, с начала строки без абзаца. Первое слово обращения и все имена собственные пишутся с заглавной буквы, так же как и слова Mrs, Mr, Miss, Dr. После обращения всегда ставится запятая. Сам текст письма начинается там, где заканчивается обращение, только строкой ниже.

2 Write the following headings correctly.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. 64 new drive | 2. Lambeth road |
| leeds | London |
| WE 4495 LW | SE 16 HU |
| UK | UK |
| September 5 2007 | January 11 2006 |

3 Write these greetings and closings correctly.

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1) dear uncle Tony | 5) hi, bruce | 8) always yours |
| 2) dear grandmother | 6) your daughter | 9) love |
| 3) dear dr manon | 7) sincerely | 10) your friend |
| 4) dear hazel | | |

¹ to be lined up — *ст.:* выстроены по одной линии по горизонтали

4 Read some part of the letter from Tom, your pen-friend. Write a letter to him. In your letter

- tell him about the new place where you are moving
 - ask him three questions about his friends and their pastimes
- I just got your letter. When are you moving to Pavlovsk? Do you know your new address yet? I hope you will like your new school and make friends with a lot of pupils.
I have joined our drama society. We are working on the play "A Visit to Paradise"¹ and hope to stage it in March.*

5 Read a part from Jack Freeman's letter to you. Jack Freeman is your pen-friend from Sydney. In your letter

- tell him about your school and your problems
- ask him three questions about his hobbies

*It was so interesting to read about your school and friends, especially about your holidays. It is so unusual to have the summer holidays in July and August. In Australia they last from December to February, when the weather is hot. Coming back to your school and school life. When does school start and finish? Do you wear a uniform? How much homework do you get? What exams do you have?
After school I often go straight to the beach to surf. I love it. Sometimes I read books and watch movies.*

6 Copy the following letter onto your paper. Correct the mistakes in all parts of the letter.

19 Olson avenue
London
SW 19 HU
UK
5 February 2007

Dear Jane

Guess what! I have some wonderful news! Last night mom had twins, a boy and a girl! All summer I dreamed of a baby sister.

¹ paradise [ˈpærədəɪz] — *парк*

Tom wanted a brother. We never thought we'd both be so lucky. Can you imagine what fun we'll have with two babies in the house? I hope you will come to visit us soon.

love Carol

- 7 A. Read how to address envelopes. Do the tasks after the text.

Addressing the Envelope

Every envelope has two addresses: an address of the person to whom you are writing and a return address, which is your own address. Write the address in the center of the envelope. Put your return address in the upper left-hand corner.

Filatov Andrew Filatov 45

37 Sadovaya Street

Moscow

119 324

Russian Federation

Return address

Miss Nancy Bennett

2 Capital Drive

London

NW 1 UH

UK

Address

- 8 Draw two envelopes on your paper. Address to these people:

1) a relation

2) a friend

Use real people and addresses.

Unit 5

Your Future Life and Career

section One

Do It Together

- 1 A. Listen to the song, (64), and say what it is about.

- B. Read the lyrics and sing the song along.

Thank You for the Music

(Benny Andersson, Björn Ulvén)

I'm nothing special
in fact I'm a bit of a bore
if I tell a joke
you've probably heard it before
but I have a talent
a wonderful thing

'cause everyone listens
when I start to sing
I'm so grateful and proud
all I want is to sing it aloud
so I say

Thank you for the music
the songs I'm singing

ничего особенного

благодарен я рода
громко

thanks for all the joy
they're bringing
who can live without it
I ask in all honesty
what would life be
without a song or a dance what are we
so I say thank you for the music
for giving it to me

Mother says I was
a dancer before I could walk
she says I began
to sing long before I could talk
and I've often wondered
how did it all start
who found out that nothing
can capture a heart
like a melody can
well, whoever it was, I'm a fan
so I say

Thank you for the music
the songs I'm singing
thanks for all the joy
they're bringing
who can live without it
I ask in all honesty
what would life be
without a song or a dance what are we
so I say thank you for the music
for giving it to me

I've been so lucky
I am the girl with golden hair
I wanna sing it out to everybody
what a joy, what a life, what a chance

Thank you for the music
the songs I'm singing
thanks for all the joy
they're bringing

песни

чтобы искренне
напой была бы жизнь

захватить сердце

who can live without it
I ask in all honesty
what would life be
without a song or a dance what are we
so I say thank you for the music
for giving it to me

Answer the questions.

- 1) Have you thought about your future yet? When is the right time to begin thinking about your future career?
- 2) What kind of activity is the most attractive¹ for you? What kind of jobs do you find good for yourself? Why?
- 3) Are you preparing for your future career now? How? Why not?
- 4) Do your parents help you with choosing a career? How do they see your future?
- 5) What advantages do having a good job and making a good career give you?
- 6) What jobs will you never agree to do? Why not?

4. Here is a list of some popular jobs. (65). Use a dictionary. Choose among them 5 that you prefer. Write them down in the order of preference. Compare your lists. Explain your choice.

accountant [ə'kaʊntənt]	librarian
air host or airhostess [eə,haʊts]	lawyer ['lɔː]
architect ['ɑːkɪtekt]	mechanic [mɪ'kænɪk]
chef [ʃef]	model
chemist ['kɛmɪst]	musician [mjʊ'zɪʃən]
computer operator	nurse
computer programmer	photographer [fə'tɒɡrəfɪ]
designer	physician ['fɪzɪʃən]
dentist	police officer
doctor	pharmacist [fɑːməst]
engineer [ˌendʒɪ'nɪə]	secretary
estate [ɪ'steɪt] agent ['eɪdʒənt]	social worker
fashion designer	sports instructor
fireman (firefighter)	teacher
hairdresser	travel agent
journalist	vet

¹ attractive [ə'træktɪv] — oпрямомеетелен

8. Say which of the jobs above are

- dangerous
- need a university education
- mostly done by men/women
- prestigious [pre'stɪdʒiəs]
- well paid
- not very well paid



Focus on Vocabulary

Предложение *If бы кто-то сделал нечто* можно понять двояко.

1) Я соделаю платье сама.

2) Мне его соделает в ателье, т. е. кто-то другой выполнит эту работу за меня.

Для того чтобы передать смысл второго предложения по-английски, употребляется оборот *to have something done*.

Сравните: Betty always has her clothes made for her. (Бетти всегда имеет одежду на заказ.) Jim has his hair cut at the hair stylist's. (Джим делает стрижку в парикмахерской.)

4. Read the sentences and say in which of them the members of the Harrison family do not do certain things themselves.

The Harrisons

Alice Bob



Aunt Beatrice

Andrew Mrs Harrison Mr Harrison

- 1) Mrs Harrison cuts Andrew's hair once a month.
- 2) Aunt Beatrice has her trousers made for her.
- 3) The Harrisons have the grass in their garden cut for them.
- 4) Mrs Harrison does the cooking for the family.
- 5) Alice does her room on Saturdays.
- 6) Little Susie has her room done for her.
- 7) Mr Harrison has his car washed for him.
- 8) Bob washes his car himself.
- 9) Bob goes to the hair stylist's once in two weeks and has his hair cut.
- 10) The Harrisons always have their house decorated and painted for them.

5. Work in pairs. Ask which of the things you and the members of your family do yourselves and which of them you have done for you. You may use some of the ideas below.

Example: Do you do shopping for the family or do you have it done?

- to cut the grass around your summer house
- to cook the meals
- to paint the doors and windows
- to wash the car
- to clean the floors and windows
- to dry-clean your clothes
- to repair your shoes and clothes
- to repair the furniture
- to make your clothes
- to do the flat or the house

6. Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [66], and repeat.

A.

rely [rɪ'laɪ] — полагаться
 within [wɪ'ðɪn] — внутри,
 в пределах, в течение
 decision [dɪ'sɪʒən] — решение
 brain [breɪn] — ум, разум
 admiration [ædmi'nɪ'reɪʃən] — восхищение
 occur [ɒ'kɜː] — 1) происхо-
 дить; 2) приходить в голову
 chore [tʃɔː] — 1) обязанность
 (чаще домашняя); 2) бремя
 waste [weɪst] — тратить пона-
 прыску

eventually [ɪ'ventʃʊəli] — в кон-
 це концов, в конечном счете
 choice [tʃɔɪs] — выбор
 discourage [dɪs'kʌrɪdʒ] — обо-
 скураживать, отговаривать
 find out — найти, обнару-
 жать
 give up — отказаться
 make up one's mind — ре-
 шить что-то делать
 change one's mind — передум-
 нуть

B.

rely (v): to rely on/upon somebody (something). You can't rely on the weather in this part of the world. John is absolutely honest, you can rely on his word. Rely on my/me doing it.

within (prep): within an hour, within a long period of time, within the next 24 hours, within the past few weeks; within the UK, within the walls of the city, within one's power. She came to the door and heard some voices within. The government is doing everything within its power to save the journalists.

decision (n): a clever decision, an important decision, a difficult decision, to make a decision. Your decision is very unwise. I would like you to think the problem over again and come to see me tomorrow. We need your final decision by Friday. Who makes decisions in your family?

brain (n): brains, to use one's brains, the left/right brain, to go something on the brain, my tired brain, his quick brain. The left brain controls the right-hand side of the body. He's got football on the brain — he can't think about anything else.

admiration (n): to be filled with (to be full of) admiration, to feel admiration for somebody, to have a great (deep) admiration for one's teacher. Jane stared at Father Frost in open admiration.

occur (occurred) (v): 1) to be likely/unlikely to occur, to occur quite naturally. The police said the accident occurred at 4 p.m. 2) to occur to somebody. It suddenly occurred to me that I would never see them again.

chore (n): 1) to do one's chores, (the) household chores, daily chores. You can go and play after you have done your chores. It usually takes me two hours to do my household chores. 2) Walking the dog early in the morning is a real chore.

waste (v): to waste time (money, efforts, etc.) on sth/sth. I'm not going to waste any more time on the problem. Why do you waste your money on lottery tickets?

eventually (adv): Did they ever pay you? — Eventually, yes. We are hoping eventually he'll pass his exam.

choice (n): to make a choice, a big choice of books, her first choice. Amy bought a red bag but my choice was white. Our parents can influence our choice of career.

discourage (v): to discourage people from doing something. What he said didn't discourage me. We hope the bad weather won't discourage people from coming.

find out (v): to find out the truth (address, etc.). Her parents found out she had a boyfriend.

give up (v): to give up doing sth, to give up sth. Eventually he decided to give up smoking. She was made to give up her career. **make up (change) one's mind:** I have made up my mind to become a diplomat and I won't change it.

1 Say the same using the new words.

- 1) You only need one piece of paper — don't use more of it than is necessary.
- 2) George's choice he made after some careful thinking was to go to university after leaving school.
- 3) It came into my mind that she didn't know our new address.
- 4) When Charles won the competition, his friends were full of pleasure and respect for him.
- 5) You can always be sure that he'll keep his word.
- 6) I don't at all mind the daily duties of cleaning, cooking and shopping.
- 7) There were so many books that it was difficult to make a decision which one to buy.
- 8) The organ of the body which controls thinking, feeling and doing things is the center of higher nervous activity.
- 9) We waited three days for the letter and at last it came.
- 10) I'll come back before the end of an hour.
- 11) The difficult work made Alan lose hope and he left school without finishing it.
- 12) My mother planned a holiday in May but then she decided against it and went in June.
- 13) Daniel decided to become a doctor like his father and grandfather before him.

2 Match the pictures with the captions.



1.



2.



3.



A.



B.

- a) To give up smoking is very easy. I did it many times.
 b) First she gave up bread, then she gave up meat, after that she gave up fish...
 c) Never give up hope!
 d) OK, I give up. Your name is not Steve, it's Red Chief!
 e) I won't give up until I turn this iron into gold.

4. Read the text and say which advice you like best.

Thinking of Your Career?

Now you are not so far from the end of school. Have you made your choice of a career? If you have, are you working harder on the school subjects you are going to need in the future? Read what three successful professionals have to say about it.



Jennifer Morrison (she is writing my third novel): In school I did well, but felt discouraged by the teachers. It all changed one summer. I felt that my school wasn't doing enough to educate me. At the same time I understood that I was responsible for my own education. My advice is don't wait for others to educate you, do it yourself. Also read as much as you can.

Patrick Martin (he is a physician): I didn't plan to be a doctor, but loved science. Later I found out that doctors also solve problems and rely on facts like scientists do, only they have to do it within a very short period of time. I like my work because I know that my decisions influence my patients' lives and I have to use my brain and hands every day. My advice to young people who made up their minds to study medicine is to ask yourself why you want to be a doctor. If it is for the prestige [pre'stɪʃ] or the money, find a different profession.



Chris Wilson (he is a computer engineer in San Francisco): When I was a kid, I wanted to be a rock star because of all the success and admiration they get. I began to play the guitar at the age of nine and spent the next 20 years chasing¹ a dream. I finished high school² and toured with a band playing in clubs. As a day job I did telephone surveys³ for a computer company. Eventually the company employed

me full time and let me learn on the job. I started to make real money and finally it occurred to me that maybe computers were more than a day job. At the age of 27 I gave up my rock star dreams because music had become nothing but a chore. My advice to young people is — you have freedom to sculpt your future but remember that there's no time to waste.

5. Choose the right item.

- 1) Jennifer thinks that in education you should rely on ...
 a) your teachers b) your parents c) yourself
 2) Patrick thinks that the medical and scientific professions ...
 a) are very different
 b) are alike
 c) can not be compared

¹ a physician [fɪ'ziʃən] = a doctor
² to chase a dream — теснить из сердца
³ high school — средняя школа (в США)
⁴ survey [vɪ'ʒu:] — опрос (обобщающее название)

- 3) Patrick thinks that ... who wants to study medicine can become a doctor.
a) everyone b) not everyone c) practically no one
- 4) When Chris says that he chased a dream he means that
a) he looked for something unrealistic
b) he looked for something nobody wanted
c) he looked for something very unusual
- 5) For Chris music ... was the most important thing in his life.
a) never b) always c) for some time
- C Listen to the text, (65) (67), then read it aloud.

- 10 Which of the following can mostly influence your choice of a future career? Put them in the order of importance. Compare your lists.

The job I'd like to have should be

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| • interesting | • unusual | • exciting | • pleasant |
| • prestigious | • popular | • satisfying | • respected |
| • creative | • challenging | • easy to do | • useful |

- 11 Speak about how you have chosen your future career. Mention
- what you wanted to do as a child
 - if and when you changed your mind
 - what or who helped you to make your choice
 - what you expect of your future job
 - what you see as advantages and disadvantages of your chosen career

Do It on Your Own

- 12 Alice and Scarlett are friends. Alice is a hardworking girl; she can do a lot of things herself. Scarlett is rather lazy, she prefers to have things done for her. Read the sentences about Alice and write about Scarlett.

Example: Alice cooks her own meals, but Scarlett...
Scarlett has her meals cooked.



- 1) Alice does her flat herself, but Scarlett...
2) Alice makes her own clothes, but Scarlett...
3) Alice plants flowers in her little garden, but Scarlett...
4) Alice paints the windows in her flat herself, but Scarlett...
5) Alice sometimes repairs kitchen devices, but Scarlett...
6) Alice washes her car herself, but Scarlett...
7) Alice always does her hair herself, but Scarlett...

- 13 Write the missing words *by, for, in, of, on, out, to, up, upon, within* (2) to make the sentences complete.

- 1) The library is ... walking distance. 2) I have known Richard all my life. We can rely ... him. 3) If you can't do something, never give ...! Try it again! 4) I hope you will make your choice ... the end of the week. 5) Karen is very pragmatic. She never wastes her money or time ... doubtful projects. 6) It never occurred ... him that she wouldn't agree to become his wife. 7) The pupils' admiration ... their teacher was really great. 8) I'm sure they will never find ... where our treasure is. 9) It is the most picturesque place ... the whole country. 10) Her choice ... salads was perfect. 11) The girl looked at the magician ... admiration.

Section Two

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text about Alexander the Great, (68) (69), and say which information is true, false or not mentioned in the text.

- 1) Alexander was young when he became King.
2) The legend speaks of the time when Alexander was leading his army to India.
3) Alexander had four thousand elephants.
4) Alexander's army became rebellious.
5) Alexander said they would go back home.
6) Alexander's soldiers celebrated the great news.
7) That night Alexander had nobody to talk to.



Chris: I see. Well, who knows, we may meet in London in a couple of years.

B. Jennifer: You know, Sam, I'm thinking of taking a musical course in the University of Manchester. Do you think I'll make it?

Sam: I'm sure you will. You're at the top of the class in chemistry and biology.

Jennifer: I hope you are right, Sam. How about you? Are you going to stay here or go some place?

Sam: Maybe I'll stay and try to find a job in our department store where I'm working now part-time. I'd love to sell modern electronic devices like laptops, digital cameras or iPods¹.

Jennifer: I know you're very good at computers and things. You can make a very good career in trading.



Focus on Vocabulary

1. Обратите внимание, что две единицы английского языка: 1) наречие **maybe** (возможно, может быть) и 2) сочетание модального глагола **may** с инфинитивом **be** относятся одинаково [maɪbi]. Однако они используются по-разному. Прежде всего наречие **maybe** падается слышно и имеет то же значение, что и знакомое тебе слово **perhaps** [pə'haɪps].

Maybe it will snow tonight. = Perhaps it will snow tonight.

Предложение с **maybe** звучит менее формально.

2. Модальный глагол **may** и глагол **be** пытаются разделить, так как **maybe** и так имеет свое значение:

There may be an easier way of doing it.

I may not be able to come on Saturday.

You may be asked to show your passport.

Сравните: Maybe he is in St. Petersburg. He may be in St. Petersburg.

5 Choose the right way to complete the sentences.

1) You (maybe/may be) not allowed to go to the party if you don't help us now. 2) (Maybe/May be) she will come later. Let's hope for the best. 3) I (maybe/may be) wrong, but I think John's decision

¹ iPod (brand name) — an electronic device like a personal Walkman into which you can download and store a lot of music (аппарат, на который можно загрузить много музыки).

is the best. 4) I'm not sure Karen is at home, she (maybe/may be) at school yet. 5) (Maybe/May be) it's my imagination, but it seems rather cold in here — is the window open? 6) We may win, but (maybe/may be) we shall lose the game. 7) You (maybe/may be) asked such questions at the interview. 8) (Maybe/May be) she has already bought flowers, but I'm not sure. 9) I don't agree with you, but (maybe/may be) you are right. 10) It (maybe/may be) cold tomorrow.

6 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (70), and repeat

A.

certain ['seɪn] — 1) несомненно; 2) уверенный
main [meɪn] — главный
clear [kleə] — 1) четкий, ясный; 2) ясный
require [rɪ'kwaɪə] — требовать
care [keə] — забота, попечение
suit [su:t] — подходить
though [ðəʊ] — хотя

patient ['peɪʃnt] — терпеливый
calm [kalm] — спокойный
experience [ɪk'sperɪəns] — опыт
cope [kɒp] — справиться
quality ['kwɒlɪti] — качество
be worth doing — стоить сделать что-то
do well in a subject — хорошо учиться по предмету

B.

certain (adj.): 1) to be certain. I'm certain that Clive knows it. 2) certain plants, certain animals, certain people. Certain plants are good to eat but others are not.

certainly (adv) — of course. Would you like to go there? — Certainly.

main (adj.): the main idea, the main choice, the main square. Piccadilly is one of London's main streets.

clear (adj.): clear blue skies, a clear photo, a clear idea, clear water. Do you know the way? — Yes, the map is quite clear. "Is that clear?"

require (v): to require some help, to require the/some information, to be required. This job requires a clear head. No knowledge of Arabic is required for entering this university department. Nothing is required of you here.

care (n): to do sth with care, to require a lot of care and love. Be sure to dry the dishes with care. To take care of sb/sth. When my parents are away I take care of our pets and flowers.

caring (adj): caring parents, caring jobs. I will never forget my first teacher: she was so nice, so caring.

suit (v): to suit sb/sth. The lively music suits my happy mood. Stay as long as it suits you. The yellow jacket suits you perfectly. (al)though (conj): I was late for school though I got up early. The movie was good although it was very long.

patient (adj): a patient teacher, a patient nurse. The teacher repeated the instructions several times in a patient voice.

calm (adj): a calm sea, a calm quiet voice, to stay calm, to keep calm, to feel calm. The sea was calm after the storm. We were told to stay calm, that help was on the way.

experience (n): to have experience in sth/doing sth; to have experience with children; to get some experience; to know from past (personal) experience. I can say from personal experience that it's hard not having a job. In my experience these things never happen.

cope (v): to cope with sb/sth, to cope with some extra work, to cope with sb's death. It's not easy to cope with such a difficult situation.

quality (n): good/bad qualities. The quality of secondary education is getting better. What personal qualities are required of a firefighter?

be worth doing sth: The book is worth reading. It's worth going there. The film is not worth seeing, it's boring.

do well in a subject: Jane does well in literature.

2 Match the words in the two columns.

- | | |
|------------|---|
| 1) certain | a) having an ability to cope with pain, trouble without being angry |
| 2) main | b) quiet, not excited |
| 3) clear | c) true, sure |
| 4) caring | d) kind, helpful, sympathetic |
| 5) patient | e) easy to see, to hear and understand |
| 6) calm | f) most important |

3 Paraphrase these sentences using your new vocabulary.

- If you want to become a firefighter, you need courage.
- I want to know how good or bad the level of education at this

college is. 3) Who looks after your dog when you leave the city? 4) I don't think I can manage the job. 5) I haven't finished the translation in spite of the fact that I began it a week ago. 6) My work with children, everything that I have done before tells me that grown ups mustn't humiliate them. 7) Everything you say is true, but this job is not good for me. I can't work in shifts¹.

4 Read the text and put the following questions in the right places.

- "Am I a good leader?"
- "What am I good at?"
- "Will I be able to cope with a long period of study?"
- "What do I want from my career?"
- "Do I have social skills?"
- "Do I have enough physical strength?"



Choosing a Career

Choosing a career is not always easy and requires some serious thinking. The final decision should be yours although there are some factors which can influence it. You can be encouraged or discouraged by your parents, teachers or friends. The situation in the society may also have a certain influence on your choice.

There are some important questions that you need to ask yourself if you don't want to make a mistake. The first is (1). This is not an easy question to answer at the age of 15 or 16 when you don't have enough experience. A good starting point is looking at what others do and getting a clear idea if it suits you. Then, naturally, you have to ask yourself (2). If you do well in maths and sciences, it may be worth thinking about engineering, air traffic control², industrial laboratory work or something in computing. If you are good at arts, think of jobs in graphic or industrial design, publishing, advertising or video. And if you like learning and using languages, you might consider being a translator, though it is

¹ a shift [ʃɪft] — па́рочка де́л

² air traffic control — па́рава на́вигация

always better to combine languages with marketing, business or some other profession.

One more question to answer is (10). Do you get on well with people? If you do, you may think about nursing, social work or other caring jobs. You may consider jobs that require meeting people — a teacher, a shop assistant or a personnel¹ manager. To do these jobs successfully you need such qualities as being cheerful, calm, patient and tolerant.

Ask yourself (11). If you are, it is worth thinking of a job where you'll manage and organize other people. If you are considering a job connected with shifts work, travelling long distances or unusual² hours, for example working at night, ask yourself (12). Some professions require a university education. Ask yourself (13). If you want to become, for example, a doctor, a lawyer or a teacher, prepare for hard work as a student. Also remember that your success in these professions often depends on experience that you get on the job.

So, to sum up, you need to think about what you are like, as well as what the job is like and what it may give you.

B. Say what answers you can give to the questions before the text.

- 10** Find in the text synonyms and antonyms to these words and read out the sentences in which they are used.

Synonyms to the words:

consideration	to need
last	joyful
some	quiet
beginning	manage
understandable	associated
to unite	to get ready
to think (about)	difficult

Antonyms to the words:

to encourage	sciences
long	social

¹ personnel [ˈpɜːsɒnəl] — персонал

² unusual — not suitable for combining with family and social life

- 11** Below is a list of personal qualities. What jobs suit people who have these qualities? Explain your choice.

Example: I think a mechanic should have an ability to work with his hands and physical strength. He also needs some interest in sciences.

Personal qualities:

imagination	good memory
patience	good ear for music
tolerance	good social skills
kindness	ability to study hard
creativity	ability to work with one's hands
courage	ability to work with one's brain
quick reactions	ability to express yourself clearly
physical strength	being a leader
interest in sciences	
interest in arts	
interest in the natural world	

Do It on Your Own

- 12** Choose the preferable form of the verbs to complete the sentences.

1) Neither Jack nor Rob (play/plays) tennis. 2) Neither of the jobs (is/are) suitable. 3) Neither of the books (has/have) been bought. 4) Either Alice or Betty (is/are) responsible for the job. 5) Either of them (has/have) a good reason to disagree with you. 6) Either Jennifer or Caroline (has/have) made the dress. 7) Both the nurses have a lot of experience with children. Either (is/are) reliable.

- 13** Express the same in English.

1) У меня две сестры. Ни одна из них не живет в нашем городе.
2) Какую ручку дать тебе — жесткую или красивую? — Любую.
3) Ты хочешь яблоко или апельсин? — Ни то ни другое.
4) Ни Анна, ни Вера не хотят работать в больнице.
5) Либо ты, либо Том должны сделать эту работу.
6) Когда я была больна, я не могла ни есть, ни пить.

Section Three

1 Listen to the text about the Antarctic explorer Ernest Shackleton, (25) and choose the right item in the statements below.

1) Shackleton came from ...

- a) Norway
- b) Britain
- c) Ireland

2) Roald Amundsen reached the South Pole ...

- a) before Shackleton
- b) after Shackleton
- c) before everybody else

3) Shackleton's idea was to ... across the Antarctic continent.

- a) ride
- b) walk
- c) ski

4) Shackleton and his team went to South Georgia ...

- a) to make a record
- b) to visit the place
- c) to help the crew

5) Among Shackleton's problems ... was not mentioned.

- a) having no warm clothes
- b) having no maps
- c) having no food

6) Eventually Shackleton ... his team.

- a) rescued¹
- b) didn't rescue
- c) gave up rescuing



A	B
sure	suitable
patient	patiently
calm	rainily
experience	experienced

- 1) The glass will certainly break if you step on it. "Will you come with me?" — "Certainly."
- 2) Babies drink mainly milk.
- 3) Try to speak more clearly.
- 4) Don't be late and work hard — these are my main requirements.
- 5) With careful steps the old man crossed the road. I carefully planted the rose bush and watered it.
- 6) Thick clothes are not suitable for warm weather.
- 7) It was raining but Mr Scott stood patiently at the bus-stop.
- 8) This teacher always talks rainily to his students.
- 9) Mr Bundy is probably the most experienced doctor in the hospital.



Focus on Word-building

1 В английском языке наименования различных профессий часто образуются при помощи созодательных суффиксов: -er, -or, -ist (последние два встречаются несколько реже).

- er teacher, worker, writer, painter, cleaner
- or tailor (портной), sailor (сержант), doctor, professor, actor
- ist pianist, guitarist, artist (художник), geologist, journalist

2 Многие сложные слова в английском языке обозначают профессии, при этом вторая часть сложного слова часто представляет собой часть business, fleet и т. д. Первоначально имя существительное male обозначало и любого взрослого человека, и мужчину. Однако в наше время слово male в большинстве случаев ассоциируется с мужчиной. Считается некорректным в названии профессии давать прямое указание на пол (мужской). Поэтому сейчас предпочитают говорить businessman, fire-fighter.

3 Точно так же слова roofer, astrot, mailman считаются устаревшими.

4 В наше время и женские названия профессий принято говорить post, fire, manager.

¹ to rescue [ˈreskjuː] — спасти

3. A. Form the words to denote various jobs and professions using the suffixes -er, -or, -ist. Check the words, look them up in the dictionary.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------|
| 1) type | 5) sail | 9) journal |
| 2) run | 6) drive | 10) paint |
| 3) direct | 7) act | 11) art |
| 4) guitar | 8) teach | 12) dance |

B. Use the names of the jobs (part A) to complete the sentences.

1) Kevin Costner, George Clooney and Tom Cruise are my favorite ... 2) We have a wonderful maths ... at school. That's why I like the subject. 3) My brother plays different musical instruments, but I can't call him a ... or a drummer. 4) I don't like to be in John's car when he drives. He is such a careless ... 5) Maya Plisetskaya used to be a brilliant ballet ... 6) Richard is a talented film ..., but his last film was not a success. 7) Someone who works on a boat or a ship is a ... 8) If you want to become a ..., you need to enter a university and have some works published. 9) I think we need a new ... Miss Clark makes so many mistakes in the documents. 10) Leonardo da Vinci was not only a famous ..., he was also an inventor and scientist. 11) The general sent a ... from Marathon to Athens to carry the news.

4. Read the texts (1-6) and match them with the names of the jobs (a-g). One name is extra.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| a) actor | e) vet |
| b) singer | f) astronaut |
| c) meteorologist | g) shop assistant |
| d) astronomer | |

1) People of this profession already save thousands of lives every year in Florida, Mexico, East Asia and other places when they warn people to evacuate their homes in good time to get out of the way of a hurricane or a storm.
2) Any dog owner knows that his or her dog can eat its 24-hour energy need in just a few minutes at a single meal. Both cats and dogs need to be offered a lot of fresh water and cat owners need to take special care to encourage their pets to drink.
3) Portraying Frodo in the Lord of the Rings Elijah Wood had a big problem — his costume. He had to get up at five o'clock every morning to put on Frodo's feet and ears.

4) When you go to fish-n-chips, they will ask you this question: open or wrapped? This is because British people eat their take-away chips in paper. If you want to eat your chips in the street, ask for them to be "open". If you want to take them home ask for them "wrapped".

5) His fun lyrics showed that rapping doesn't always have to be about street violence and crime. Not long ago he criticized other rappers for encouraging children to use incorrect English. He's very intelligent and he first wanted to go to university but changed his mind and decided to make music instead.

6) In March, 2004 a new planet was discovered 10 billion kilometers from Earth and was named Sedna. The news was especially exciting because the planet was found beyond what was understood to be the edge of the planetary solar system.



Focus on Grammar

В речи у нас нередко возникает необходимость ответить на реплику говорящего словами: «Я» (он, она) тоже. Посмотрим, как это делает англоязычные. Обратите внимание на порядок слов в ответе и на то, какие глаголы в нем используются.

1. Реплика говорящего представляет собой утвердительное предложение.

- 1) Tom is a programmer.

So am I.

So is he (she).

So are you (we, they).

So have I (we, etc.).

So has she (he).

So do I (we, you, they).

So does Bob.

- 4) We spent a week in Siberia.

So did I (you, we, they, he).

- 5) They were playing football at

So were we (you, they).

- 5 o'clock yesterday.

So was I (he, she).

- 6) I have already done it.

So have we (you, they).

So has he (she).

- 7) I can swim.

So can he (she, we, you, they).

- 8) You should go there.

So should I (we, he, she, they).

- 9) I shall/will come.

So will they (he, she).

В действительной речи вместо So am I, So have I и т. д. можно услышать: Me too.

2. Реплика показанного представляет собой отрицательное предложение.

1) I am not a teacher.

Neither am I.

Neither is he (she).

Neither are we (you, they).

2) They haven't got an iPod.

Neither have I (you, we, they).

Neither has she (he).

3) Anna doesn't play football.

Neither do I (we, you, they).

Neither does Bob (she).

4) We didn't visit the British Museum.

Neither did I (you, we, etc.).

5) He wasn't driving at that time.

Neither was I (he, she).

Neither were we (you, they).

6) I haven't done it.

I have never done it.

Neither have I (we, you, they).

Neither has she (he).

7) I can't ride a horse.

Neither can he (we, you, she, they).

8) You mustn't do it.

Neither must you (he, she).

9) She won't be there.

Neither will I (we, he, you, they).

5 Read the sentences and give your reaction to them. Speak about yourself or people you know. Use *So...* or *Neither...*

1) I love travelling.

2) I have never been to Ireland.

3) I come from Russia.

4) I don't like hot weather.

5) I couldn't swim when I was 5.

6) I have a pet.

7) I will go to university when I finish school.

8) I sometimes come home late.

9) I should water the plants at home.

10) I didn't go shopping yesterday.

8 Work in pairs. Find out five or six things that you've got in common, and write sentences about them using *so...* or *neither...*

Example: I like skating and so does...

I haven't been to Paris and neither has...

4 Look at the pictures and compare them. Use *so...* or *neither...*



Example: The parrot is orange and so is the orange.
The dog is not big and neither is the cat.

- Read the text "A Polite Traffic Policeman" and make it complete using the most suitable word from the list (a-d). You may need a dictionary.



A Polite Traffic Policeman

A traffic policeman is a police officer who ⁽¹⁾ traffic by standing in the road and giving signals to the drivers with the help of his ⁽²⁾. He is also a police officer who stops drivers who ⁽³⁾ the law and ⁽⁴⁾ them a ticket which is a written notice of an offence against the driving laws.

If you park your car in the ⁽⁵⁾ place, a traffic ⁽⁶⁾ will soon find it. You will be lucky if he ⁽⁷⁾ you to go without a ticket. However, this doesn't always happen. Traffic police are sometimes very polite. ⁽⁸⁾ a holiday in Sweden, I found this note on my car: "Sir, ⁽⁹⁾ to our city. This is a *no parking area*. You will ⁽¹⁰⁾ your stay here if you pay attention to our street signs." After getting such a ⁽¹¹⁾ you cannot fail to obey.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1) a) makes | b) opens | c) directs | d) moves |
| 2) a) arms | b) hands | c) fingers | d) palms |
| 3) a) follow | b) obey | c) break | d) listen to |
| 4) a) shows | b) writes | c) takes | d) reads |
| 5) a) wrong | b) bad | c) poor | d) allowed |
| 6) a) police | b) policewoman | c) policeman | d) policemen |
| 7) a) allows | b) doesn't allow | c) lets | d) doesn't let |
| 8) a) While | b) During | c) When | d) In |
| 9) a) come | b) greet | c) welcome | d) meet |
| 10) a) enjoy | b) remember | c) hate | d) forget |
| 11) a) note | b) letter | c) paper | d) text message |

- Read the text and then choose the worst five jobs from the list. Compare your choice with the other students' and explain it.

A London-based magazine asked readers to send e-mails telling about the most unpleasant jobs they ever did. The result was a

book of 100 anecdotes about work. The editor said, "We are told that working hard is good for us, but some jobs make people so unhappy that they have to take anti-depressants. They often work long hours and get very little money for it." Here are some of the most unpopular jobs which made the top of the list.

postman
hospital nurse
rats exterminator
sandwich maker
hospital administrator
bus driver
night office cleaner
holiday camp cleaner

fish head slicer¹
chicken inspector
kitchen help
gravedigger²
spy
washing-up person
cinema popcorn seller
traffic counter

What other jobs can you put on this list?

Do It on Your Own

- Complete the sentences using *all*, or *neither*...

1) John is fifteen and ... is his sister. They are twins. 2) I didn't understand what I had to do, ... did my classmates. 3) We couldn't find our keys, ... could our parents. 4) I like autumn, ... does my mother. 5) I have no choice, ... have you. 6) Mary doesn't like sport, ... do I. 7) My cousin looks ill, ... does my brother.

- Express the same in English.

A. 1) Никто из нас не хочет сегодня выходить из дома. 2) Все мои друзья собираются сегодня пойти в кино, и я тоже. 3) Я не могу справиться с этим упражнением, и мой приятель тоже. 4) Либо я, либо мы все вместе поможем вам. 5) Терпеть не могу теплую погоду, и мой младший брат тоже.

B. 1) Ум думашка, эта работа будет подходящей для меня? 2) В нашей школе работает несколько очень опытных учителей. 3) Теперь я вижу эту проблему очень ясно. 4) У меня только

¹ a fish head slicer ['slɪsə] — администратор, чья работа нарезать рыбные головы

² a gravedigger ['grævdɪɡə] — могильщик

ко два требования: будьте внимательны и не бегите через дорогу. 5) Мой папа может объяснить мне любое правило спокойно и терпеливо. 6) Я конечно же согласен с тобой. 7) Учителя английского языка преимущественно женщины.

Section Four

Do It Together

- 1 You will hear five people (1–5) talking about what they are going to do when they leave school. Listen to the tape, [52] (72), and match what they say with their decisions (a–f). There is one extra decision.



1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

- a) I will go on with my education in the subjects in which I do well.
- b) I will work and earn some money which will be easy as I've got some experience in the field.
- c) I would like to find a job where I can travel a lot.
- d) I will do what my family advise me to do.
- e) I am not absolutely certain about what to do.
- f) I would like to have some eaning job and work during social hours.

- 2 A. The words *job*, *profession*, *occupation* and *career* are often used in the similar contexts. Find out the difference between them. You may need a dictionary.

A *job* is the work that a person does regularly to earn money. A *profession* is a job that requires special training, often a university education and brings a rather high social status. An *occupation* is a job or a profession. This word is usually used especially on forms and in formal writing.

A *career* is the series of jobs that a person does in his or her life, usually in one and the same field.

- B. Put the words *job*, *profession*, *occupation* or *career* to complete the sentences.

- 1) His ... as a pilot came to an end after a bad road accident.
- 2) I know that Jane is unemployed now and looking for a ...
- 3) Please write your ... on this form and hand it in.
- 4) My mother is a lawyer. I think it is a very interesting ... I would like to be a lawyer too.
- 5) Please write your name, address and ...
- 6) Half the people who were interviewed had physical ...
- 7) Choosing a ... can be a very difficult decision.
- 8) — What's your ...? — I work as a secretary.
- 9) People of teaching ... are mainly women.
- 10) My father discouraged me from going into medical ...



Focus on Grammar

Обратите внимание на различия в использовании этих английских русских слов *anyone*, *no one* и *anybody*.

- 1. *Cheque* or *credit card* — you can use *either*. (Любой из двух употребится.)
Give me an apple, please. *Any* will do. (Любой из тех, что есть в магазине, не является чем-то дурным.)
- 2. John and Jill are both here, but *neither* can help us. (Никто из двух присутствующих.)
No one/*Nobody* can help us. (Никто вообще.)
None of you can help us. (Никто из присутствующих, а не больше чем два.)

3. Обратите внимание на особенности употребления неопределенных местоимений *no one*, *nobody*, *none*:
a) *No one* (никто, ни один человек) может использоваться во всех случаях, когда возможно употребление местоимения *anybody*, однако *no one* употребляется значительно чаще.

Where is Alice? — *No one* (nobody) knows where she is.
No one (nobody) has ever climbed this mountain.

b) *None* (ни-ни-ни) используется с *of*-фразой:

None of the girls (none of us) will go there.

При этом глагол может иметь форму как множественного (чаще), так и единственного числа (реже).

None of his friends (yet) nearby.

c) После местоимения *none*-часть используется словосочетание *at all*.

— Have you got any money?

— No, none at all. Sorry.

d) None usually finishes (nothing) and stays at the end of the sentence.
Is there any bread at home? — No, there is none.
I have two brothers but Ann has none.

e) В диалоге местоимение *none* часто выступает в роли одноклассного предложения.

How many fish did you catch? — None.

1 Complete the sentences with the right words.

- 1) There are two good films on today. Which would you like to watch? — (Either./Any.)
- 2) I have a lot of friends but (neither/none) of them is as close to me as Jill.
- 3) We have two bedrooms but (neither/no one) is comfortable enough.
- 4) There are all kinds of books in this bookcase. Choose (either/any) you like.
- 5) Of all the big cinemas in our town (neither/none) is near my house.
- 6) Tea or coffee? — (Either/Any) will do.
- 7) We need some ideas of how to celebrate the coming holidays. (Either/Any) ideas are welcome.
- 8) Meet Justine and Fiona. (Neither/None) of them speaks Russian.
- 9) I like (either/any) vegetables but my favourite are cauliflower and tomatoes.
- 10) Both puppies were so wonderful that I was prepared to take (either/any).

4 Which of these things would you like for yourself? Use both, all, either, neither, none where possible.

- 1) a Ford and a Mercedes
- 2) a course of English, French, Spanish, German
- 3) a good bike, a digital camera, a motorboat
- 4) a mobile, a computer, a notebook, an iPod
- 5) a pair of new jeans, a new top, a fashionable belt
- 6) a winter hat, mittens, warm socks, boots
- 7) a penthouse, a summer cottage, a lot of money
- 8) a good education, a good job
- 9) good friends, a boy/girlfriend, a loving family
- 10) a lot of homework, house chores
- 11) entertainment, a lot of free time, an interesting hobby
- 12) a twin brother or sister, lots of uncles and aunts

1 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (73), and repeat

A.

fulfil¹ [fʊlɪl] — выполнять
continue [kən'tɪnjuː] — продолжать
grade [ɡreɪd] — 1) оценка;
2) уровень обучения
degree [dɪ'ɡriː] — степень
acquaint [ə'kwɛɪnt] — знакомить
course [kɔːrs] — курс

owe [əʊ] — должен
debt [deɪt] — долг
mortgage ['mɔːtʃɪdʒ] — ссуда, заем для покупки дома, ипотека
retire [rɪ'taɪə] — уходить на пенсию (в отставку)
exactly [ɪɡ'zæktli] — точно
attract [ə'trækt] — привлекать

B.

fulfil (v): to fulfil a role (a function, a purpose); to fulfil one's duty (promise), to fulfil a plan. The church fulfils an important role in this town. The government has failed to fulfil its election promises.

continue (v): to continue to do sth, to continue doing sth, to continue with studies. Doctors advised him to continue taking the medicine for another week. James looked at me and continued to read the papers. She decided to continue with her studies for another two years.

grade (n): 1) to get good grades, to improve one's grades. I got a good grade in geography. 2) to be in the 1st grade. Fifteen-year-olds are usually in the ninth grade.

degree (n): to some degree, to a large degree, to a certain degree. What you say is true to some degree. A bachelor's degree², a master's degree³, a biology degree, a degree in maths. Ann has got a master's degree in English Literature.

acquaint (v): to acquaint sb with sth, to be acquainted with sb or sth, to get acquainted with sth. Let me acquaint you with this problem. Are you acquainted with the latest rules? Where did you get acquainted with Sergey?

course (n): to do a university course, to take a course in modern languages. Nigel is doing a law course at the university.

¹ to fulfil = fulfill (A.M.E.)
² a bachelor's degree — степень бакалавра
³ a master's degree — степень магистра

- owe (v): to owe money, to owe sb two dollars. I owe my brother fifty roubles that he lent me last week.
- debt (n): to have debts, to be in debt/out of debt. John is in debt to the bank because he bought that big house.
- mortgage (n): to get a mortgage, to take out a mortgage, to have a mortgage on one's house. I can't get a mortgage now because I'm unemployed.
- retire (v): to retire at the age of 60. In Russia women retire at the age of fifty-five and men at the age of sixty.
- exactly (adv): exactly ten. Please tell me exactly what you saw. This dress is exactly what I wanted.
- attract (v): to attract people, to attract investors. Tourists are attracted by sandy beaches of California.
- attractive (adj): attractive jobs, attractive plans, an attractive woman.
- 6 Read the questions and match them with the answers.
- 1) What courses are you taking?
 - 2) What are you going to do to improve your grades in history?
 - 3) Have you fulfilled your plan?
 - 4) How long does it take one to get a bachelor's degree?
 - 5) At what age do people retire in Britain?
 - 6) What is attractive in teaching profession?
 - 7) Have you ever been in debt?
 - 8) Are you acquainted with his latest novel?
- a) To read more books on history.
 - b) No, I haven't read it yet.
 - c) It's a caring job.
 - d) English Literature and History of the language.
 - e) Not exactly.
 - f) Several times.
 - g) Three or four years.
 - h) Women usually at 60 and men at 65.
- 7 Cross the odd word out.
- 1) grade, degree, mortgage, graduate, bachelor
 - 2) fulfil, continue, acquaint, attract, mortgage
 - 3) grade, debt, mortgage, exactly, course
 - 4) continue, course, exactly, attract, grade
 - 5) fulfil, degree, mortgage, attract, own
 - 6) owe, retire, course, debt, continue
 - 7) acquaint, attract, debt, degree, fulfil

- 8 Read the text and say which of the three things make Frank unhappy: a) the fact that his parents are making him go to university; b) the fact that he is expected to make a standard career; c) the fact that he'll have to pay his debts.

My Own Way

Part I

School... exams... university... job... pension... Have you ever felt you are on a conveyor belt? Are you fulfilling your parents' plans or have you got other ideas? Get acquainted with one young man's story of how he decided to follow his own dream.



"I sometimes feel like I'm a product that is continually being processed in a factory. In our society you're born, you go to nursery school, and then on to primary school. You study for five years for your GCSEs in a secondary school. Then, if you get the right GCSE grades, you can go on to college to study for your A-levels. The right grades will allow you to go to university to study for a degree. Before you go to university, you might go on a gap year to get a little life experience but you don't take more than a year. This is not allowed.

So you finish your university course owing lots of money to banks for various debts you've built up during your time at university. You're already on the conveyor belt and it is very hard to get yourself off. You find a job, a girlfriend, whom you may eventually marry; you buy a house together and start paying off your mortgage.

You decide to have children and put them on the same conveyor belt. You earn more money and retire, grow old, die. Well done. You did it. You did exactly what this society asked of you. To be honest such a prospect doesn't attract me."

8 Listen to the text, [en] (74), then learn to read it aloud.

9 What do you think Frank did to follow his dream?

10 In process [pɹɒsɪs] — migrate [mɪgrɪt]

- 9 Comment on this diagram. This one may be true about Britain. Is the situation in Russia the same?

On the Conveyor Belt of Life

BORN



- 4 65% of all 4-year-olds are in nursery school

10



- 18 39% of all 18-year-olds get two or more A-levels

20



- 22 The average student leaves university with a debt of £10,000

- 26 The average graduate starting salary¹ is £18,175 a year

30



- 29 The average age for marriage (women)

- 32 The average age for marriage (men)

- 35 70% of 35-year-olds are in debt

30



- 40 The average age for divorce²

40



- 60 Retirement (women)

- 65 Retirement (men)

- 78 The average British citizen dies

50



60

70

80

¹ a salary ['sæləri] — зарплата

² a divorce ['dɒvɔːs] — развод

- 10 Read the text "My Own Way" again and answer the questions.

- 1) What does Frank mean when he says that he feels he is on a conveyor belt?
- 2) What are the usual stages that a lot of British people go through, as Frank sees it?
- 3) What is a gap year? Why do young people take it?
- 4) What kind of debts can a university graduate ['ɡrædʒuət] have?
- 5) Why do you think Frank mentions mortgage as an important debt to the bank?
- 6) Are you fulfilling your parents' plans or have you got different ideas?



Did You Know That...?

At the age of 16, students in England and Wales take GCSE examinations. They must take examinations in subjects such as English and maths, but can choose the other subjects that they study. The marks students get in their examinations help them decide which subjects to study for A-level, if they are not planning to leave school.

Students who take A-levels study for two years and take examinations at the end of the course. They usually study only three subjects for their A-levels. Students who want to go to university must take A-level examinations. In England and Wales university courses usually take three years and students typically study one or two subjects. In the UK, students take out student loans, which means that they borrow money from a bank to pay for their living costs and tuition and often have large debts by the time they finish their course. Some students from poor families get a grant from the government.

At the end of their course of studies university students get their first degree called Bachelor's degree in arts or sciences. If they want to continue their education, they can study for another year or two and take their Master's degree or become Doctor of philosophy.

Do It on Your Own

- 11 Complete the sentences with the new words.

1) We have e... five minutes before the bell, let's run! 2) A lot of my friends would like to get a university d... but others are planning to begin their professional c... right after school. 3) The teaching p... a... me like no other. 4) That's all for today but I promise to c... my story tomorrow. 5) I hate being in d..., that's why I never borrow money. 6) When I have some free time I'd like

to take a c... of Italian, I like the sound of this language. 7) Today I'm going to a... you with some new grammar rules. 8) When my grandmother r..., she began to miss her work and her colleagues. 9) I still o... the bank some money, though I have already paid back most of the m... 10) Sooner or later I'll f... my dream and travel round the world. 11) Jack's g... at school are getting better and better.

- 12 Express the same in English. Use the words *any, either, neither, none, no one*.

1) Любимый ученик этого класса способен ответить на любой из этих двух вопросов. 2) Твое имя Кейт или Мэри? — Ни то ни другое. 3) Сколько у тебя братьев и сестер? — Ни одного. 4) Какую из двух фотографий ты выберешь? — Никакую. Она обе мне не нравится. 5) Она думает, что никто из ее друзей не ее понимает. 6) К сожалению, здесь никто не говорит испански. 7) У меня две кошки, ни одна из них никогда не покидала квартиры. 8) Филипп проверил, есть ли у него кофе, и обнаружил, что нет. 9) У меня много конфет, бери любую. 10) У меня есть два хороших видеофильма, мы можем посмотреть любой из них.

Section Five

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text,  (75), and say which of the following is not mentioned in it.



- 1) The Stradivari family lived in Italy. 2) There were some other families who were making musical instruments in Italy at about the same time.

- 3) The instruments made by the Amati, Guarneri and Stradivari families have been used by a number of great musicians. 4) Antonio Stradivari was Nicolo Amati's pupil. 5) Nicolo Amati was the most famous of all the Amati instrument makers. 6) Antonio Stradivari didn't always work with Nicolo Amati as he eventually opened his own shop. 7) Antonio's sons, Francisco and Onobono, became very famous too. 8) Stradivari's instruments are different from other masters'. 9) Stradivari worked until he was very old. 10) Altogether Stradivari made more than a thousand wonderful violins, violas and cellos.



- 2 You know the words in column A. Read the sentences and guess what the words in column B mean.

A	B
debt	debtor
acquaint	acquaintance
attract	attractive
exactly	exact
retire	retired
fulfil	fulfilment

- 1) I have paid my debt and I am no debtor any more. 2) John is an acquaintance of mine but I don't think I can call him a close friend. 3) I find the idea of travelling very attractive. 4) The ex: time is three minutes and thirty-five seconds past four. 5) My grandfather is a retired doctor. 6) After many years, our plans have come to fulfilment.

Focus on Grammar

В английском языке возможны три типа (I-II-III) словосочетаний с глагольными структурами. 1) ... *had better* и 2) ... *would rather*. Обратите внимание на особенности их употребления.

...had better

(личн. существительное
обстоятельство, место, время)

- 1) It's seven o'clock. We'd better start making dinner.
- 2) He'd better hurry up if he wants to get home before dark.
- 3) They'd better not wake Father when they come back.

...would rather

(личн. существительное)

- 1) I'd rather go home now (not later).
- 2) My sister would rather go to Edinburgh than to Glasgow.
- 3) I know that the children would rather go to Val's party than to the cinema.

1 Complete the sentences with *had better* or *would rather*.

- 1) Which ... you ... do, go to the cinema or stay at home?
- 2) I think you ... look the word up again; you don't remember what it means.
- 3) I ... not say what I think.
- 4) Where ... you ... go — to Kiev or to Odessa?
- 5) We ... finish the work today as tomorrow evening we are leaving for Irkutsk.
- 6) My sister ... eat porridge and fruit than meat and potatoes. I know her taste.
- 7) I think I ... have a gap year than go to university.
- 8) ... not he ... stay with us until he gets well?
- 9) You ... put your warm coat on. It's freezing outside.
- 10) We ... not be late. Our parents will be worrying.
- 11) I ... have five lessons of English than one lesson of Physics.
- 12) She ... change her job — it is too dangerous.

4 A. What would you rather do?**Would you rather**

- stay in your home town or leave it after you finish school?
- get a university or college education or go straight to work after school?
- live with your parents or have a home of your own?
- get married or live alone?
- get married and have a lot of kids or get married and have ~~not~~ one or two kids?
- live in a big city or in the countryside?
- work for someone or be your own boss?
- work hard and have a lot of money or have an easy life and earn little?

g What had this person better do if

- he/she doesn't know what to do after school?
- he/she badly needs some pocket money?
- he/she has a lot of free time and doesn't know what to do with it?
- he/she hasn't got any friends and feels lonely?
- he/she finds studying at school difficult?
- he/she is addicted to computer games?
- he/she is in love with someone who doesn't love him/her?
- he/she is a shopaholic?

5 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (76), and repeat**A.**

secure [sɪkjʊə] — безопасный
security [sɪkjʊəriti] — безопасность, охрана
guard [ɡɑːd] — стражник
life guard — спасатель
bodyguard [ˈbɒdɪɡɑːd] — телохранитель
fortune [ˈfɜːtʃən] — состояние, богатство
refuse [rɪˈfjuːz] — отказываться
proper [ˈprɒpə] — правильный

B.

secure (adj): a secure job, a secure future; to be secure from sb/sth, to feel secure. She wanted a job with a more secure future. Everyone wants to be financially secure.

security (n): national security, international security, a security adviser. If you don't leave, I'll have to call security.

guard (n): a prison¹ guard, a group of guards. There was an armed guard on duty outside his door. A brave lifeguard, a young bodyguard.

fortune (n): to make a fortune, to cost a fortune, to spend a fortune, to pay a fortune. Henry Ford made his fortune with his cars. They spent a fortune on flowers alone.

¹ a shopaholic [ˌʃɒpəˈhɒlɪk] — человек, тратящий неоправданно большие деньги на покупки
² a prison [ˈprɪzn] — тюрьма; тюрьменный

refuse (v): to refuse to do sth. Mum asked him to apologize but he refused. How could he refuse to help his own sister?

employer (n): somebody's employer. An employer is responsible for his workers. Daniel's employers offered to pay for his course.

expectation (n): to have high/low expectations, to meet sb's expectations, against sb's expectations, in expectation of sth. The team went to play the match without any expectation of success. We had heard so much about the film but it didn't meet our expectations. The Robinsons are parents with high expectations for their children.

gap (n): a gap in the mountains, a gap between the tapes, to fill in the gaps in one's education. There are wide gaps in my knowledge of history.

proper (adj): a proper job, a proper education, proper tools. That's not a proper way to do it! The problem was they didn't have a proper place to study.

properly (adv): properly dressed, properly trained.

rescue: to rescue people, to rescue sb from sth. The firefighters rescued several people from the house on fire. Debora tried to rescue her younger sister from falling off the stairs.

follow in sb's footsteps: Antonio Stradivari's children followed in their father's footsteps.

get down to sth: get down to business at once. It's hard to get down to work after a nice long holiday.

4 Read the questions and match them with the answers.

- 1) Why have you come to the party?
- 2) Why does he never allow anyone drive his car?
- 3) What do you think of the book?
- 4) Why is this information secret?
- 5) What has Richard got this medal for?
- 6) Who is your favourite actor?
- 7) Why did the young man make up his mind to change his job?

- a) It is connected with the national security.
- b) Kevin Costner. Especially in the film "Bodyguard".
- c) No wonder! They have spent a fortune on it.
- d) Unfortunately, his employer wasn't honest enough.
- e) It was impolite to refuse.
- f) Unfortunately, it didn't meet my expectations.
- g) He rescued a small girl from the house on fire.



Focus on Vocabulary

Phrasal verb to come

- 1) **to come across** — *naprinstupit'sya, natskryts'ya*
I came across a very interesting article yesterday.
- 2) **to come down with** — *naprastit'sya sbolemu, ceno*
He came down with a cold. He'd better stay in bed.
- 3) **to come off** — *oslobozhit'sya, otkryts'ya*
Come off the grass!
She came off her bicycle.
A button came off her blouse.
- 4) **to come around** — *zayavitsya, natskryts'ya*
Is mum coming around?
I could come around if you like.

5 Complete the sentences. Use the words across, down, off, with, around.

- 1) I have never come ... such a horrible man in my life.
- 2) Why don't you come ... after work?
- 3) You look terrible. Are you coming ... with the flu?
- 4) The second horse was galloping and the rider came ...
- 5) Joseph came ... a word he had never seen before.
- 6) You could come ... to our house and have a talk with my granny.
- 7) Jane is sneezing and coughing. I think she is coming down ... a cold.
- 8) Lizzy came ... her new hike and hurt her leg.
- 9) We have never come ... such attractive people.
- 10) Look! A button came ... your dress.

6 A. Read the second part of Frank's story and say how he understands happiness.

My Own Way

Part II

I went to school and college until I was eighteen. I passed my A-levels, then went surfing around the world on my gap year. I really don't like the word gap because for me that year was full of important activity. Nowadays we are encouraged to take a gap year, we are told that future employers love it because it means you have done something original to talk about in your job interviews. But when the gap year is over, you must get down to serious work — start earning money and



making plans for the future. We need to think of our security. Personally I don't believe security can come from a big house and a fast car or a university degree. All those things create an illusion that you are secure. Security, in my opinion, comes from within oneself.

I'm now on my *fourth gap year* and I am happy, truly happy. Every summer I work as a beach lifeguard in Cornwall where thousands of people go for their summer holidays. I don't earn a fortune but my life is rich. I wake up every morning and I see the ocean. I can surf every day if there are waves. I don't want any other life.

I believe that lots of people know what makes them happy but they choose to ignore it because they want to meet the expectations of the society. I don't want to see the world in the movies and read about it in books. I want to see it myself, smell it, hear it and feel it. I refuse to follow other people's footsteps.

People often ask me what I want to do with my life and when I'm going to get a proper job. They forget that I may be the person who rescued their child on a beach one summer. Isn't that proper enough? I want to do exactly what I'm doing right now. Sure I'd like a little house and maybe bring a baby into the world, but I want to go my own way.

8. Listen to the text, (77), then learn to read it aloud.

9. Find in the text above the words and phrases which mean the following

- 1) the year in which young school leavers or students in Britain and other countries do some jobs or travel with the idea to get some experience
- 2) people who are planning to give us a job in the future
- 3) something interesting and unusual (to talk about)
- 4) to begin doing (serious work)
- 5) to give someone the wrong idea
- 6) really (happy)
- 7) a swimmer employed on a beach to help swimmers in danger
- 8) to earn a lot of money
- 9) to refuse to pay attention to something
- 10) they want to do what the society expects of them
- 11) films
- 12) to follow other people's example
- 13) (a) suitable (job)

10. Answer the questions.

- 1) When Frank says that he "went surfing around the world" does he mean that he surfed in different parts of the world or that he surfed all the way around the globe?
- 2) Why does Frank say that he doesn't like the word *gap*?
- 3) How does Frank explain it that young people are encouraged to take a gap year? Do you think taking a gap year is a good idea?
- 4) How is security usually understood? How does Frank understand it? How do you understand it?
- 5) Why did Frank choose Cornwall for himself? What ocean does he see every morning?
- 6) What does Frank mean when he says that his life is rich? Could this lifestyle satisfy you? Why? Why not?
- 7) Do you agree that life should be an adventure? Is it true for everyone? Is it true for you?
- 8) Why do you think Frank feels rebellious about following other people's footsteps? What do you feel about it?
- 9) What makes Frank happy and satisfied? Can the way of life Frank chose for himself make you happy? What's your idea of a happy life?
- 10) Is Frank making any plans for the future? What are they? What are yours?

11. A. Make a list of questions you would like to ask Frank.

B. Work in pairs and act out a talk with Frank in which he'll have to answer your questions and probably ask you something as well.

Do It on Your Own

12. Write the same differently. Use 'if better' and 'if rather'.

- Example: a) Linda prefers going to the north in summer. Linda would rather go to the north in summer.
 b) My advice is that you should have a good holiday. You'd better have a good holiday.

- 1) We all prefer spending this evening out. 2) My advice is that Charlie should make up his mind about which of the two employers to work for. 3) My advice is that the girls should wear their

best clothes for the party. 4) My dad prefers to look through his morning newspaper at breakfast. 5) My friends prefer listening to modern music. 6) My advice is that you should solve this problem yourself. 7) A lot of people prefer to send e-mails nowadays. 8) My advice is that the children should stay at home: it's too cold outdoors.

11 Express the same in English.

A. 1) Реска! Софда с клумбы (flowerbed). 2) Н никогда не встречала такого слова в английском языке. 3) Думаю, Алиса не пойдет в школу завтра. Она заболела (у нее простуда). 4) Да-да Том пойдет? 5) У меня от куртки отлетела пуговица. 6) Н как-то не удалось на предложение, которое не могу перевести.

B. 1) Приняться за дело; 2) безопасное будущее; 3) прощание между друзьями; 4) быть одетым должным образом; 5) спасение от террористов; 6) добрый работодатель; 7) в ожидании дня рождения; 8) нажать остаточно; 9) храбрый спасатель; 10) отказаться наотрез выполнять эту работу.

Section Six. Consolidation Class

Do It Together

1 You will hear five texts (a-e) advertising TV programmes. (28)
2 Say which of the specialists (1-6) is likely to take part in which programme. There is one person on the list who is not going to take part in any.



1. John Parker,
a meteorologist



2. Lucy Harrison,
a zoologist



3. Jennifer Wilson,
an astronomer



4. Alan Macmillan,
a cinematographer



5. Fred Porter,
a forecaster



6. Brian Woodriff,
an cinematographer

3 A. Read the text and complete it with the phrases given below.

- a) away from home
- b) best known
- c) as a lawyer
- d) he had made his home
- e) followed by other children's stories
- f) who became very successful
- g) and then wrote down
- h) to follow in his father's footsteps

R. L. Stevenson

The name of Robert Lewis Stevenson is familiar to everyone who likes literature. He was a novelist, poet and essayist ⁽¹⁾ at a certain stage in his career.

Stevenson was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, on November, 13, 1850. The son of a well-to-do engineer, Stevenson was expected ⁽²⁾. Anyhow young Stevenson felt that engineering was not for him. He became a law student in Edinburgh university and soon began writing. In 1875 he qualified ⁽³⁾. At that time he had already become a popular writer thanks to his many published in a number of newspapers and magazines.

Stevenson had a bad health problem, tuberculosis, which made him spend a lot of time ⁽⁴⁾ in countries with a more suitable climate. In France he met Fanny Osbourne, who became his wife. Fanny had two children from her first marriage. It was Lloyd, her son, for whom Stevenson made up ⁽⁵⁾ his famous book "Treasure



Island" (16). Among his grown-up books the horror story, "The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde" is probably (17). At the end of his short life the writer and his family moved to one of the islands in the South Pacific where he lived for another six years writing and enjoying the most beautiful and exotic land (18).

8. Use the text above as an example and speak about someone's successful career.

3. Read the text and make it complete with the words made from the forms on the right.

Dr. Benjamin McLane Spock was the first person to complete (1), training as a pediatrician and a psychiatrist. Dr. Spock is (2), both for his book on child care and for his (3), in the piece (4). "The Common Sense Book of Baby and Child Care" was a great contrast to earlier child-care books. Before Dr. Spock (5), taught parents to be strict with their children and warned them against showing too much love for them. Dr. Spock taught parents to show their (6), answered (7) questions and encouraged parents to set high (8) for their children. In many ways the book was (9), a revolution in the field.

profession
fame,
leader
move

write

feel, practice
expect
real

4. Imagine that you are a school career adviser. Say what jobs you would recommend these school leavers to take up.

1. *Name:* Victoria *Surname:* Holmes
Qualification and/or experience: I have been a baby-sitter for a year. Sometimes I do household chores for my neighbours.
Preferences: I like children, playing with them, reading to them.
Other information: I'm good at singing and very much interested in music. But my family needs my financial support. I would like to start working as soon as possible.

2. *Name:* Nancy *Surname:* Dixon
Qualification and/or experience: I've been helping with washing up in a hotel restaurant.
Preferences: I'm not sure that I want to go to University. I like travelling and always take pictures of the places I have visited.
Other information: I have won prizes at photo competitions. My friends say I get on well with people.

3. *Name:* William *Surname:* Thompson
Qualification and/or experience: I'm working in a chemistry laboratory having a part-time job, but I have no qualifications.
Preferences: I like chemistry, biology and read a lot about animals. Have two pets at home and take care of them.
Other information: I'd like to go to University, but I'm not sure what course I would like to take. I'm thinking about going into medicine, but it's not my first choice.

4. *Name:* Rose *Surname:* Farrell
Qualification and/or experience: None
Preferences: I'm good at literature, history, languages, in other words at the arts. I like to imagine things and write my own stories.
Other information: I can type and work on the computer. I like reading and working with books. I think I'm a bookworm!

5. *Name:* Sam *Surname:* Davidson
Qualification and/or experience: I have been driving for a year.
Preferences: I like working with machines, repair them.
Other information: I would like to be financially independent of my family and I am ready to do various jobs even during unsocial hours.

* a bookworm [ˈbʊkwɜːm] — someone who reads a lot

3 Work in pairs. You and your partner are thinking of taking a job after leaving school. Discuss possible jobs each of you would like to get. Consider these points:

- if you would like to be employed by the government or prefer to work for a private company
- if you would like to get a full-time job, a part-time job or an odd job¹
- if you are planning to study further in the future and want your job to be connected with the career you have chosen for yourself
- if your ambition is to get a lot of money or you would rather get a job that can develop your talents and abilities

4 Say what job (jobs) you would like to try in the future. Mention these:

- if it needs a university degree, qualification and/or special training
- where you can and would like to get the necessary qualification or degree
- how long it may take you to get this job
- how you can characterize the job you have chosen
- why you have chosen it

7 A. Read the text and complete the sentences after it.

Are Girls Cleverer Than Boys?



It's a fact that girls usually do better than boys even in such subjects as mathematics or science, and people used to think that those were more suitable for boys than for girls. There are some reasons for this. Boys and girls behave very differently in and out of school.

Here are only some examples of such difference. Boys make more trouble, while girls are usually well-behaved. In class boys often put up their hands to answer questions but give the wrong answers. At the same time girls do not always put up their hands

even if they know the answer because they are not one hundred percent sure. Girls spend more time than boys doing their home-

¹ odd job — *спровоенна работа*

work as they care more about their progress at school and their grades. In the modern world girls are becoming a lot more ambitious.

Girls are more realistic, more down-to-earth. For example, boys spend a lot of time playing computer games and watching action films on television because they live in a world of their own fantasy. When girls use computers, they usually do it for some practical reason.

Ask a fourteen or fifteen-year-old boy about his future career and he is very likely to tell you that he would like to get a lot of money or be a DJ or a basketball player. At the same time most of girls being more realistic, think of becoming teachers, doctors or managers. They choose careers where there's less unemployment as they want to have a secure future. The good news is, however, that later on boys become more interested in studies and even outdo girls as their examination results often show.



- 1) Boys are ... hardworking at school than girls.
 - a) more
 - b) less
 - c) neither more nor less
 - 2) ... don't like making mistakes while ... don't care too much about it.
 - a) boys... girls
 - b) girls... boys
 - c) teachers... boys and girls
 - 3) Nowadays girls ... more about their academic results.
 - a) dream
 - b) talk
 - c) worry
 - 4) For ... the computer is entertainment rather than work.
 - a) boys
 - b) girls
 - c) boys and girls
 - 5) Girls plan their future ...
 - a) more carelessly
 - b) more carefully
 - c) less carefully
 - 6) Eventually boys become ...
 - a) professionals
 - b) unemployed
 - c) better pupils
4. Listen to the text, [audio icon] (79), then learn to read it aloud.

B Work in groups and find out how many of you

- are thinking about taking a job immediately after school
- want to study further and have a part-time job

- want to go to university
- feel pressure¹ from their family in choosing your career
- are going to get some special training before taking a job
- are interested in computers and modern technologies and would like to work in the field of science
- are good at arts and languages and want to have a career in this field
- would like to be their own boss and have their own business in the future



Focus on Social English

Learn to use connectors² when you speak English

so — так
as — так
because — потому что
that's why — вот почему
however/anyhow — как бы то ни было

nevertheless — тем не менее
although — хотя
on the contrary — наоборот
actually/in fact — на самом деле
eventually — в конце концов

Use suitable connectors in the phrases below.

- 1) ... he's got a good job now, he is still not happy.
- 2) It's a really useful book ... it explains everything very clearly.
- 3) Today is one of the happiest days in my life and I'm so glad to see you all, ... I didn't come here to talk about myself.
- 4) He lived in Paris for three years, ... he speaks French very well.
- 5) Jane has never said that she wants to be a nurse, ... she tells everyone that she hates this occupation.
- 6) It took Simon a long time to make up his mind but ... he agreed that going to university would be the best.
- 7) Did you spend much money? — Yes, quite a lot, ... I think I spent it all.
- 8) I know you have just arrived, ... I'd like to discuss a couple of things with you first and then you'll have some free time and relax.

¹ pressure ['preʃə] — давление

² connector [kə'nektə] — соединитель

Complete this dialogue with the connectors. Use your Social English. Act the dialogue out.



Career adviser: Well, Paul, last time we met you said you were in two minds about your future career. ⁽¹⁾ you said you would think about it again and ask for your parent's advice.

Paul: Yes, I did. It seems that my parents see me as an engineer or computer programmer. ⁽²⁾ they want me to follow in my father's footsteps. ⁽³⁾ I don't like this idea at all. I don't want to work with any kind of machinery. ⁽⁴⁾ I'd like to work with people.

Career adviser: Doing what?

Paul: I think I'd like to work in a bank. ⁽⁵⁾ It means meeting people and besides banks pay you well.

Career adviser: That's true, ⁽⁶⁾ but you'll need a university education if you want to make a career in banking.

Paul: I've been thinking about it. ⁽⁷⁾ I'm rather good at mathematics. ⁽⁸⁾ I can take a university course of economics.

Career adviser: It's not a bad idea, Paul. ⁽⁹⁾ It means a lot of hard work during your last year at school.

Paul: I understand. Well, I think I'm ready for it.

Do It on Your Own

- 1) Write a paragraph about the job you consider ideal for yourself.
- 2) Which of the two will you choose to complete the sentences?

1) I've been working very hard this year (so/as) I enjoy learning English.

- 2) My homework is always well prepared (because/that's why) I remember the material better.
 3) (Although/anyhow) I find certain things rather difficult, I know that I'm making good progress.
 4) I'm sure that (nevertheless/eventually) my English will be good enough.
 5) (So/actually) even now it is not so bad and I think I can be proud of myself.
 6) (In fact/however) I understand that I still have a long way to go but I don't mind it (although/as) language learning is fun.

Section Seven. Creative Writing

Writing Social Notes

Writing a social note is a polite way to thank someone, to invite someone to a party, or to accept¹ an invitation.

Thank-you notes

Thank-you notes are a special way of being polite. A thank-you note shows that you are grateful² for someone's kindness. You write a thank-you note to show that you like someone's present.

You also write a thank-you note when you have been a guest at someone's house or when someone has done you a special favour³. Remember to write thank-you notes as soon as possible after you have received some kindness. It is important. It is also important to use specific details.

For example, you may mention a type of the gift, its size and colour and how the gift will be enjoyed or used. If you stayed overnight at someone's house, you should mention the date of your visit and also events or activities during your stay.

¹ to accept [ək'sept] — принимать

² grateful ['grætfəl] — благодарный

³ favour ['feɪvə] — удовольствие, услуга

Invitations

Invitations are written to ask people to come to a party or some other event. Invitations should include all the necessary information about the event and usually gives the following details:

- 1) what event it is;
- 2) why it is being held;
- 3) where it will take place;
- 4) when it will take place (day, date and time);
- 5) any special instructions.

Sometimes invitations may include four letters RSVP (*Répondez, s'il vous plaît* in French which means *Answer, please*). These letters are necessary when for the person who writes an invitation it is important to know how many people will come.

Answering an invitation

When you receive an invitation you should answer as soon as possible. In your answer you either accept the invitation or write a note of regret.

With such a note the person planning the event will know exactly who is coming and will be able to make plans. Notice that it is polite to explain why you can't accept the invitation.

Internet

You may say that nowadays people don't write letters to each other or do it very seldom. It is true but on the other hand email messages have become very common.

In email messages the text is written in the same way as in letters and they have the same parts: heading, greeting, body, closing and signature.

The only difference is that in emails people often try to make their messages shorter, leaving out unnecessary details.

SMS or text messages are a different thing. They have to be as short as possible. That's why people who send them use strange shortenings. Here are some examples:

for	4
seeing	Cing
friend	frnd
love	lv
mate	m8
week	wk

1. A. Read the thank-you note below. Notice that it is short and that the heading has just the date.

November 3, 2006

Dear Grandmother,

The blouse you sent me for my birthday is really nice. It suits me all right, and I like the colour very much. I was wearing it at my birthday party, and all the guests told me it was very becoming. Thank you for remembering my birthday in such a nice way.

Your Granddaughter
Rachel

- B. Say what details Rachel mentioned in her thank-you note.

2. Read the thank-you note below. Say why Carmen's friends have written it and what details they mention in the note.

April 23, 2006

Dear Carmen,

Thank you so much for the absolutely fantastic week-end we spent at your place. We enjoyed every minute of it. We don't think we shall ever forget our visit to the Lake District and those unbelievable views of the place.

Be sure you will get the pictures we took during our trip.

Love,
your friends Alice and Ross

3. Write two thank-you notes from the list below. You can use your imagination or write about a real event in your life.

- 1) Thank your neighbour for helping you to repair your bike.
- 2) Thank your aunt (uncle) for the birthday gift.
- 3) Thank your friend for the party.
- 4) Thank your grandparents for the month you have spent with them.
- 5) Thank your cousin for helping you with a school project.
- 6) Thank your aunt for having you to dinner.

4. Read the invitation below and answer the questions.

- 1) What information does the heading include?
- 2) Why do you think this information is needed?
- 3) What details in your opinion should be included in an invitation?
- 4) Can you find the five parts typical of a letter (heading, greeting, body, closing, signature) in this invitation?

23 Redcliff Street

London

Ne 224RD

December 7, 2006

Dear Aunt Sally and Uncle Tom,

I would like to invite you both to our schoolplay, "The Case for Two Detectives". I play the part of a rich old lady. The play will be performed on Thursday, December 21, at 6 p. m. in our assembly hall. I hope you can come.

Your niece,
Marion.

5. Write invitations for two of the following events. Be sure to include all the necessary details about it. Don't forget the five parts of a letter that should be put in.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) a birthday party | 4) a weekend visit |
| 2) a jazz band concert | 5) a school performance |
| 3) a picnic | |

6. Read what answer Aunt Sally has written to her niece Marion. What details has she included in her note?

December 10, 2006

Dear Marion,

Your Uncle Tom and I would love to come and watch your play. We will be there early so that we can get a good seat. Good luck in your part.

Love,
Aunt Sally.

7 Write an invitation for an imaginary party you would like to have. Exchange invitations with your classmate and write an answer to your classmate's invitation, saying that you accept it.

8 Alice Robinson also wrote an invitation to her aunt. She wanted her Aunt Grace to come and see the same play on December 21. Read Aunt Grace's answer and say why she won't be able to join Alice.

December 21, 2006

Dear Alice,

I would love to come to your play, but unfortunately I am leaving for France on December 20. When I get back, you can tell me all about the play.

I'm very sorry that I can't come.

Love,

Aunt Grace

9 Write an invitation for a picnic you would like to have. Exchange invitations with your classmate and write an answer to your classmate's invitation explaining that you can't come.

Англо-русский словарь

A

abnormality [əbɒr'mæləti] аномалия

to accept [ək'sept] принимать

accountant [ə'kaʊntənt] бухгалтер

see [si:] view (в купеческой шпоре)

to achieve [ə'tʃi:v] достичь

achievement [ə'tʃi:vment] достижение

to acquaint [ə'kwɛɪnt] познакомиться

acquaintance [ə'kwɛɪntəns] 1) знакомство; 2) знакомый

actually [ə'ktʃʊəli] на самом деле

adaptation [ædəp'teɪʃn] адаптация, приспособление

television adaptation телевизионная версия

addict [ə'dɪkt] пристрастившийся, зависимый человек

addicted [ə'dɪktɪd] пристрастившийся

to be addicted to sth быть пристрастившимся к чему-то

to admire [əd'maɪə] восхищаться, любоваться

admiration [əd'mɪr'eɪʃn] восхищение

to stare in (open) admiration не отрывая восхищенного взгляда

to advertise [əd'vɜ:zɪz] рекламировать

advertiser [əd'vɜ:zɪzə] рекламодатель

to advise [əd'vaɪz] советовать, давать совет

apart [ə'pɑ:t] а part

air hostess [eə'həʊstəs] стюардесса

alarm clock [ə'lɑ:m,klɒk] будильник

alien [ə'li:ən] пришелец

alone [ə'ləʊn] один

to leave sb alone оставить кого-то в покое

to allow [ə'ləʊ] позволять, разрешать

although [ə'lðəʊ] хотя

amusement arcade [ə'mju:zment ə'keɪd] зал игровых автоматов

annual ['ænjuəl] ежегодный

anyhow ['eni,haʊ] как бы то ни было

anyway ['eni,wei] во всяком случае, так или иначе, тем не менее

Antarctic, the [æn'tæktɪk] Антарктида

to apologize [ə'pɒlədʒaɪz] извиняться

apoduct [ə'pɒdʌkt] аподукт

arch [ɑ:tʃ] арка

architect [ˈɑ:kitekt] архитектор

- to argue ['ɑ:ɡju:] спорить
to argue for/against sth приводить аргументы «за» и «против» чего-либо
- argument ['ɑ:ɡjʊmənt] аргумент
- around [ə'raʊnd] вокруг
- arrow ['aɪrəʊ] стрела
- article (on/about) ['ɑ:tɪkl] статья
- artist ['ɑ:tɪst] художник
- as [ə; æ] поскольку
- ashamed (ə'ʃeɪmd) стыженный
to be ashamed of sth стыдиться чего-либо
- asleep [ə'sli:p] спящий
to be fast asleep крепко спать
to be half asleep быть в полудонном состоянии
to fall asleep уснуть
- astronomer [ə'strɒnəmə] астроном
- to attract [ə'trækt] привлекать
- attractive [ə'træktɪv] привлекательный
- author ['ɔ:θə] автор
- axe [æks] топор

B

- babyhood ['beɪbɪhʊd] младенчество
- barefoot ['beɪfʊt] босиком
- basket ['bæskɪt] корзина
- to be on ['bi: ɒn] идти (о фильмах, программах)
- What's on at the cinema? Что идет в кино?
- beyond [bɪ'jɒnd] за пределами
- (a) bill [bɪl] счет
- blind [blaɪnd] слепой
the blind слепые (люди)
- bookworm ['bʊkwɜ:m] книжный червь
- bores [bɔ:] зануды
- bored [bɔəd] скучающий
I got bored. Мне надоело.
- boredom ['bɔədɪəm] скука
- both [bəʊt] оба, обе
- bottom ['bɒtəm] дно, низ
- bow [bəʊ] лук для стрельбы
- brain [breɪn] мозг, ум, разум
to get sth on the brain думать о чем-то
- brainless ['breɪnləs] бессознательный, глупый
- brainy ['breɪni] умный

- breakthrough ['breɪkθru:] прорыв
- to broadcast ['brɒdkɑ:st] транслировать
to broadcast sth live транслировать непосредственно в эфир, без записи на пленку
to broadcast on channel 5 транслировать по 5-му каналу
to broadcast on the radio транслировать по радио
to broadcast on TV транслировать по телевидению

C

- to call [kɔ:l] звать, называть, кричать, громко звать
- calls [kɔ:ls] звонки
- capable ['keɪpəbl] способный
- capitalisation [ˌkæpɪtəl'aɪzən] написание с заглавной буквы
- to capture ['kæptʃə] захватить, пленить
to capture sb's heart завоевать чье-то сердце
- care [keə] забота
to take care of sb/sth заботиться о ком-то/чем-то
- carriage ['kærɪdʒ] вагончик, карета
- to carry ['kæri] нести
to carry a subject иметь задолженность по предмету
- cart [kɑ:t] тележка, телега
- to cater ['keɪtə] удовлетворять запросы
to cater for sb удовлетворять чью-то запросы
- They are well catered for. О них хорошо заботятся.
- cartoon ['kɑ:tʊn] мультфильм
- Caucasian [kɔ:'keɪʃən] казаканец; казахский
- certain ['seɪn] уверенный
- certainly ['seɪnlɪ] конечно, конечно
- certainty ['sɜ:tɪnɪ] уверенность
- CD player [ˌsi: ɔ: ˈpleɪə] проигрыватель компакт-дисков
- challenge ['tʃelɪndʒ] вызов, трудная задача
a challenge to fight миссия на бой
- challenging ['tʃælɪndʒɪŋ] трудный, но интересный
- channel ['tʃenəl] канал
- character ['kærɪktə] 1) характер; 2) герой (книга, фильма)
- chariot ['tʃæriət] колесница
- charity ['tʃærɪtɪ] благотворительность
- charter ['tʃɑ:tə] чартер
- to chase [tʃeɪs] преследовать
to chase a dream гоняться за мечтой, за недостижимым
- cheap [tʃi:p] дешевой

cheer [tʃɪr] веселить

to cheer up развеселиться

cheerful ['tʃɪfʊl] веселый

chef [ʃɛf] шеф-повар

cheffe [ʃɛfoʊ] жалованье

chemist ['kɛmɪst] химик

childhood ['tʃɪldhʊd] детство

choice [tʃɔɪs] выбор

chose [tʃɔʊ] 1) заказ, obligation (обычно по дому); 2) бремя

citizen ['sɪtɪzn] гражданин

to claim [kleɪm] 1) требовать; 2) утверждать, заявлять

clear [kleə] чистый, ясный

cloth [klɒθ] ткань, тряпка

coffee maker ['kɒfiːmeɪkə] кофеварка

colleague ['kɒliːg] коллега

colony ['kɒləni] колония, колонизация

to come [kʌm] приходить

to come across наткнуться, встретить

to come down with сечь (с какой-то болезнью)

to come off сойти, упасть, оторваться

to come around оглянуть, поглядеть

to combine [kəmˈbaɪn] соединять

comedy play ['kɒmɪdiːpleɪ] комедийная пьеса

commence [kəmˈɛns] начинать

commercial [kəmˈɜːʃɪəl] реклама (телевизионная)

to compare [kəmˈpeɪr] сравнивать

to complain [kəmˈpleɪn] жаловаться

to concentrate ['kɒnsɪtreɪt] концентрировать

concentration [kɒnsɪˈtreɪʃn] концентрация, сосредоточенность

conclusion [kɒnˈkluːʒn] заключение, завершение

conditional [kənˈdɪʃənl] условный

connector [kənˈɛktə] связь-связка

consumer [kənˈsʊmə] потребитель

to continue [kənˈtɪnjuː] продолжать

contrary ['kɒntrɪ] противоположный

on the contrary наоборот

cooker ['kʊkə] кухонная плита

cool [kuːl] прохладный (о температуре)

copper ['kɒpə] 1) и медь; 2) ad/ медный

corporation [kɒrˈpɒrɪʃn] корпорация, объединение

cosmonaut ['kɒsmɒnɒt] космонавт

counsellor ['kaʊnsələ] психолог, советник

courage ['kʌrɪdʒ] смелость

It takes courage to do this. Для того чтобы сделать это, нужна смелость.

couple ['kʌpl] пара

a married couple супружеская пара

course [kɔːrs] курс (предмета)

to create [kriːeɪt] создавать

creation [kriːeɪʃn] создание

creative [kriːeɪtɪv] творческий

creator [kriːeɪtə] творец

crime [kraɪm] преступление

a crime film фильм детективного жанра

criminal ['krɪmɪnəl] 1) преступник; 2) ad/ преступный

crop [krɒp] 1) урожай; 2) сельскохозяйственная культура, растение

to cross [krɒs] пересекать

to cross out зачеркнуть

crust [krʌst] корочка

crudity ['krʌdɪti] жестокость

cud [kʌd] жевать, жевание

cushion ['kʌʃən] подушка, буфер

current ['kʌrənt] текущий, сегодняшний

current address нынешний адрес

current news последние новости

(the) current political situation текущая политическая ситуация

to be in current use использоваться в настоящее время

D

daily ['deɪli] ежедневный

to date [deɪt] встречаться с кем-то, назначать свидание

deaf [deɪf] глухой

the deaf language (слова)

debt [deɪt] долг

to be in debt быть в долгу

to pay (off) a debt расплатиться с долгами

debtor ['debɪtə] должник

decision [dɪˈsɪʒn] решение

to make a decision принять решение

decisive [dɪˈsɪsɪv] решительный

deed [diːd] поступок, дело

deep [diːp] глубокий, глубоко

degree [dɪˈɡriː] степень

bachelor's degree степень бакалавра

master's degree степень магистра

to a certain degree в определенной степени

to depress [dɪˈpres] угнетать, приводить в упадок

depressed [dɪˈpres] угнетенный, подавленный

- depression [dɪ'preʃn] тоска, депрессия
 desire [dɪ'zaɪə] желание, страстное желание
 destiny ['destɪni] судьба
 destruction [dɪ'strʌkʃn] разрушение, уничтожение
 device [dɪ'vaɪs] приспособление, устройство
 digging stick ['dɪŋg, stɪk] палка-копалка
 to disappear [dɪsə'peə] исчезать
 to discourage [dɪs'kʌrɪʃ] обескураживать, разочаровывать
 to discourage smb from doing smth отговаривать кого-то от чего-либо
 discoverer [dɪs'kʌvə(r)] 1) исследователь; 2) первооткрыватель
 dishwasher ['dɪʃ,wɪʃ] посудомоечная машина
 divorce [dɪ'vɔː] развод, расторжение брака
 to do [duː] делать
 to do well in a subject хорошо учиться по какому-то предмету
 documentary [ˌdɒkjʊ'mɛnt(ə)rɪ] документальный фильм
 dome [dəʊm] купол
 don [dəʊ] преподаватель университета
 doubt [daʊt] сомнение
 drugs [drʌg] лекарства, наркотики
 duty [ˈdʌti] долг, служба
 to be on duty быть на дежурстве, на посту
 to be off duty быть свободным от дежурства

E

- eagle ['iːɡl] орел
 to earn [ɜːn] зарабатывать
 to earn one's living зарабатывать себе на жизнь
 elderly ['eldli] пожилой
 election(s) [ɪ'lekʃn(s)] выборы
 empire ['empaɪə] империя
 employer [ɪm'plɔɪə] работодатель
 to enable [ɪn'eɪbl] дать возможность, позволить
 to encourage [ɪn'kʌrɪʃ] поощрять, поощрять, ободрять
 engine ['endʒɪn] 1) двигатель; 2) locomotive
 a diesel engine дизельный двигатель
 engineer [ˌendʒɪ'nɪə] инженер
 engineering [ˌendʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ] инженерная специальность
 to enjoy oneself [ɪn'dʒɔɪ wʌn'self] хорошо проводить время
 to enlighten [ɪn'laɪn] просвещать
 enlightenment [ɪn'laɪnmənt] просвещение
 to enter [ˈentə] входить, поступать
 to enter (the) University поступать в университет
 to envy [ˈenvi] завидовать

- equal ['iːkwəl] равенств
 to be equal to/with smth быть равным кому-то, чему-то
 equality [ˈiːkwəlɪti] равенство
 to equip [ɪ'kwiːp] оснащать
 equipment [ɪ'kwɪpmənt] оборудование
 especially [ɪ'speʃli] особенно
 estate agent [ɪ'steɪ, eɪdʒənt] риэлтор
 event [ɪ'vent] событие
 eventually [ɪ'ventʃʊəli] в конце концов, в конечном счете
 evidence [ˈevɪdəns] доказательства
 exact [ɪɡ'zækt] точный
 exactly [ɪɡ'zæktli] точно
 to exchange [ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ] обмениваться
 to exist [ɪɡ'zɪst] существовать
 expectation [ˌekspek'teɪʃn] ожидание
 to meet smb's expectations соответствовать чьим-то ожиданиям
 against smb's expectations вопреки ожиданиям
 to expel [ɪk'spel] выгонять, исключать (из школы)
 experience [ɪk'sperɪəns] опыт
 in one's experience в соответствии с чьим-то опытом
 to explore [ɪk'splɔː] изучать, исследовать
 exploration [ˌeksplɔː'reɪʃn] исследование
 extreme [ɪk'striːm] крайний, предельный
 extremely [ɪk'striːmli] чрезвычайно
 eyesight ['aɪsaɪt] зрение

F

- fable ['fæbl] басня
 fall [fɔːl] провалиться
 failure ['feɪlʃə] провал, неудача
 fair [feɪə] справедливый
 to be fair to smb быть справедливым по отношению к кому-то
 fairy tale ['feəri, teɪl] сказка
 to fall [fɔːl, fɔːlən] [fɔːl] падать
 to fall out with smb поссориться с кем-то
 fascinating [ˌfæʃɪneɪtɪŋ] притягательный, чарующий
 fashion designer [ˈfæʃn, dɪzəɪnə] модельер
 favour ['feɪvə] одобрение
 in smb's favour в чью-то пользу
 to feel [fiːl, felt] [fiːl] чувствовать
 to feel at home чувствовать себя как дома
 to feel well хорошо себя чувствовать
 to feel bad плохо себя чувствовать

fence [fens] ограда, забор
 to find out [faɪnd'aʊt] обнаруживать, найти
 fleet [fli:t] флот
 flight [flaɪt] рейс, полет
 to be on (the) flight быть на борту самолета
 to delay the flight задержать рейс
 to flunk [flʌŋk] провалиться(ся) на экзамене
 to follow ['fɒləʊ] следовать
 to follow sb's footsteps идти по чьим-то стопам
 food mixer ['fu:dmɪksə] миксер
 fool [fu:l] глупый человек, дурак
 forecaster ['fɔ:kastə] человек, составляющий прогноз погоды
 to form [fɔ:m] формировать, составлять
 to be formed (ed) состоять (из чего-либо)
 fortune ['fɜ:ʃn] 1) удача; 2) богатство, состояние
 frequency ['frɪkwənsi] частота
 fruit machine ['fru:tma:ʃɪn] игровой автомат
 frying pan ['fraɪn,pæn] сковорода
 to fulfil ['fʊlfl] выполнять
 fulfilment ['fʊlflɪnt] выполнение, исполнение

G

to gamble ['gæmbəl] играть в азартные игры
 gap [gæp] проем, пространство
 to fill the gap заполнить пространство
 a gap year год перерыва в учебе для студентов университетов
 to gaze (at) [geɪz] вглядываться на что-то
 to gaze into sth всматриваться во что-то
 general ['dʒenrəl] общий
 in general в общем
 the general public широкая публика, общественность
 generation [dʒenə'reɪʃn] поколение
 the older (younger) generation старшее (младшее) поколение
 generation gap проблема отцов и детей
 gently ['dʒentli] нежно, осторожно, мягко
 to get (get, got) [get] получить, достигнуть
 to get away съезжать, уезжать
 to get on (well) (на какой-либо транспорте)
 to get off (out) (с транспорта)
 to get into the car сесть в машину
 to get out of the car выйти из машины
 to get over справиться, преодолеть что-либо
 to get down to work заняться за работу

ginger ['dʒɪŋgə] рыжий
 to give up [gɪv'ʌp] отказаться, оставить, бросить
 glass [glɑ:s] стекло, тоска
 grade [greɪd] оценка; ступень обучения
 grain [graɪn] зерно
 grateful ['grætfʊl] благодарный
 guard [gɑ:d] охранник, охранник
 a bodyguard телохранитель
 a life guard спасатель
 guess [ges] догадка
 to make guesses строить предположения
 to guess [ges] догадываться
 guilty ['gɪlti] виновный
 guy [gaɪ] парень

H

hairdresser ['heɪ,dresə] парикмахер
 hair dryer ['heɪ,draɪə] фен для сушки волос
 hammer ['hæmə] молот, молоток
 hang-glider ['hæŋg,glɑɪdə] планер-парашютист
 hangout ['hæŋgaut] место встречи, отдыха (подростков)
 hand [hænd] рука
 on the one hand, on the other hand с одной стороны, с другой стороны
 heater ['hi:tə] обогреватель
 hose [hoʊz] шланг, труба
 helmet ['helɪm] шлем
 helicopter ['helɪkɒptə] вертолет
 help [help] 1) я помогаю; 2) с помощью
 You couldn't help H. Начать нельзя было издалека.
 hemisphere ['hemɪsfaɪə] полушарие
 highlights ['haɪlaɪts] основные вещи
 high school ['haɪskul] средняя школа в США
 to hold (hold, held) [həʊld] 1) держать; 2) проводить
 to hold by the hand держать за руку
 to hold sth with both hands держать обеими руками
 to hold a meeting (party) проводить собрание (вечеринку)
 Hold on! Подожди! Не вешай трубку!
 honesty ['ɒnɪsti] честность
 hoodie ['hudi] куртка или плащаница с капюшоном
 host [həʊst] хозяин; ведущий ток-шоу
 a host country принимающая страна
 however [haʊ'evə] как бы то ни было
 human ['hju:mən] человеческий

humane [hju'meɪn] гуманный
 humanity [hju'mænəti] человечество
 to humiliate [hju'mili'eɪt] унижать
 humiliating [hju'mili'eɪtɪŋ] унижающий
 humour ['hju:mə] юмор
 humorous ['hju:mərəs] юмористический

I

ignorant ['ɪɡnərənt] невежественный
 to imagine [ɪ'mæʒɪn] представлять себе, воображать
 imagination [ɪ,mæʒɪ'meɪʃn] воображение
 it takes great imagination нужно большое воображение
 immoral [ɪ'mɔ:rl] аморальный, противоречащий морали
 impossible [ɪm'pɔsəbl] невозможный
 to improve [ɪm'pru:v] улучшать, усовершенствовать
 improvement [ɪm'pru:vment] улучшение
 indebted [ɪn'deɪtəd] 1) обязанный (деньги); 2) крепкая связь
 independence [ɪn'dɪpendəns] независимость
 industrial [ɪn'dʌstriəl] промышленный, индустриальный
 industrial revolution промышленная революция
 infinitive [ɪn'fɪnɪv] инфинитив, неопределенная форма глагола
 instead [ɪn'stəd] вместо
 instead of doing sth вместо того, чтобы делать что-то
 to interrupt [ɪntə'rʌpt] прерывать, перебивать (своевысказание)
 interruption [ɪntə'rʌpʃən] прерывание
 intimate [ɪn'tɪmɪt] личный, интимный
 intimate secret сокровенная тайна
 to invent [ɪn'vent] изобретать
 invention [ɪn'veɪʃən] изобретение
 inventor [ɪn'ventə] изобретатель
 to investigate [ɪn'vestɪgeɪt] расследовать
 iPod ['ɪpɒd] айпод (iPod - марка портативных плееров)
 irregular [ɪ'reɡjələ] нерегулярный
 irrigation [ɪrɪ'ɡeɪʃən] орошение
 to irritate [ɪ'reɪt] раздражать
 irritation [ɪrɪ'teɪʃən] раздражение
 iron ['aɪən] 1) железо; 2) утюг

J

to joke [dʒɔ:k] шутить, шутить над кем-то
 jogging ['dʒɒɡɪŋ] бег трусцой
 joke [dʒɔ:k] шутка

journal ['dʒɜ:nəl] журнал
 journalist ['dʒɜ:nəlist] журналист
 joy [dʒɔɪ] радость
 job [dʒɒb] работа
 odd job временная работа

K

kid [kɪd] 1) ребенок; 2) (разг.) ребенок
 kindness ['kaɪndnəs] доброта
 knife [naɪf] нож
 knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] знание
 to have some (no) knowledge of smth (sb) иметь представление о чем-либо

L

labour ['leɪbə] труд
 a labour market ['leɪbə,mɑ:kɪt] рынок труда
 to lay (laid, laid) [leɪ] класть, положить
 to lay the table накрыть на стол
 to launch [lɒnʃ] 1) с запуском (ракеты); 2) с запуском
 lawyer ['li:ə] адвокат, юрист
 to lead (led, led) [li:d] вести
 to lead a busy life вести активный образ жизни
 leader ['li:də] лидер, вождь; 2) передовик
 leather ['leðə] 1) кожа; 2) ad/ кожаный
 legend ['ledʒənd] легенда
 to let (let, let) [let] позволять, разрешать
 lens [lenz] линза
 lie [laɪ] 1) лгать; 2) с ложью
 to tell a lie (lies) лгать
 to light (lit, lit) [laɪt] осветить
 likely ['laɪklɪ] вероятно
 local ['ləʊkl] местный
 lonely ['ləʊnlɪ] одинокий
 to look [lʊk] смотреть
 to look after присматривать, ухаживать, заботиться
 to look at смотреть на
 to look for искать
 to look forward to sth (doing sth) с нетерпением ждать чего-либо
 to look through просмотреть
 lousy ['ləʊsɪ] 1) грязный; 2) веревчатый

M

- mad [mæd] безумный, сумасшедший
 to be mad about sth бить без ума от чего-либо
 to go mad сойти с ума
 madly ['mædli] безумно
 madness ['mædnəs] безумие
 main [meɪn] главный
 major ['meɪdʒə] основной
 to make (made, made) [meɪk] делать
 to make sb do sth заставить кого-то что-либо делать
 to make up one's mind решить что-то
 manhood ['mænhu:d] зрелость (у мужчин)
 mass media ['mæsmi:diə] средства массовой информации
 measuring ['meɪʒɪŋ] измерение
 memorable ['memə(r)əbl] памятный
 memory ['meməri] память
 memories ['meməri:] воспоминания
 meteorologist [ˌmi:tɪrɒlədʒɪst] метеоролог
 microwave ['maɪkrəweɪv] микроволновая печь
 minor ['maɪnə] незначительный
 mirror ['mɪrə] зеркало
 model ['mɒdl] макет, модель
 monthly ['mʌnθli] ежемесячный
 mood [mu:d] настроение
 moral ['mɒrəl] мораль
 mortgage ['mɔ:tɪʃ] ссуда, заем для покупки дома, ипотека
 to get a mortgage получить заем (ссуду)
 to take out a mortgage взять заем (ссуду)
 musician [mju:'ziʃn] музыкант
 mystery ['mɪstri:] тайна

N

- naturally ['nætʃ(ə)rəli] естественно
 nevertheless [ˌnevəðə'les] тем не менее
 newscaster ['nju:skɑ:stə] диктор
 nickname ['nɪk,nem] прозвище
 note [nəʊt] записка, примечание
 to notice ['nəʊtɪs] замечать
 notorious [nəʊ'tɪʃəs] печально известный, отъявленный
 novel ['nɒvl] роман

O

- above [ə'bi:v] находящийся сверху
 to object [əb'dʒekt] возражать
 to object to sth возражать против чего-то
 observation [əbzə'veɪʃn] наблюдение
 occupation [ˌɒkjʊ'reɪʃn] занятие, профессия
 to occur (occurred, occurred) [ə'kɜ:] 1) происходить; 2) приходить в голову
 It occurred to me... Мне пришло в голову...
 ocean ['oʊən] океан
 an ocean liner океанский лайнер
 oceanographer [ˌoʊənɒ'græfɪ] океанограф
 to offer ['ɒfə] предлагать
 old [əʊld] старый
 the old старые люди
 opportunity [ˌɒpə'tju:nəti] возможность
 to take the opportunity to do sth воспользоваться возможностью сделать что-то
 to owe [əʊ] задолжать

P

- pair [peɪə] пара
 pantheon ['pænθɪən] пантеон
 paper ['peɪpə] 1) газета; 2) бумага
 good quality paper бумага высшего качества
 a quality paper серьезная газета
 paradise ['pærədaɪs] рай
 patient ['peɪʃnt] терпеливый
 participate [pɑ:'tɪpɪpeɪt] участвовать
 partíciple ['pɑ:tnɪpəl] причастие
 peaceful ['pi:siəl] мирный
 periodical [ˌpɪərɪ'dɪkəl] периодическое издание, журнал
 person ['pɜ:sn] человек
 personnel [ˌpɜ:snəl] персонал
 photographer [fə'tɒgrəfɪ] фотограф
 phrasal verb [ˌfræzəl'veɪb] фразовый глагол
 physician [fɪ'ziʃn] врач
 physicist [ˈfɪzɪkəl] физик
 pile [paɪl] 1) о стопке; 2) о складывать в стопку
 plain [pleɪn] простой
 plough [plʌʊ] плуг
 poem [pəʊm] стихотворение

- point [pɔɪnt] пункт, сторона, точка
 strong and weak points сильные и слабые стороны
 position [pə'zɪʃən] позиция
 poll [pɒl] опрос общественного мнения
 pot [pɒt] горшок, кастрюля
 power [paʊə] власть
 to present [pre'zent] представлять
 to present a performance представлять спектакль
 to present a show представлять развлекательную программу
 to present sb to sth представить одного человека другому официально
 to preserve [prɪ'zɜ:v] сохранять
 pressure [preʃə] давление
 prettily ['preɪtɪli] красиво, привлекательно
 pretty ['preɪ] 1) *adj* красивый; 2) *adv* достаточно
 prewriting [pre'raɪtɪŋ] подготовка к письму
 prime time [praɪm,taɪm] время-тайм (время, когда наибольшее количество зрителей смотрит передачу)
 to print [prɪnt] печатать
 to print in black and white печатать в черно-белом варианте
 to print in colour печатать в цвете
 printer ['prɪntə] принтер
 prison ['prɪzn] тюрьма
 private ['praɪvət] личный, частный
 a private driveway собственный подъезд к дому
 a private life личная жизнь
 to produce [prə'dju:s] производить
 production [prə'dʌkʃən] продукция
 prohibition [ˌprɒmɪ'bɪʃən] запрет
 proofreading [pru:f,ri:dn] чтение корректуры
 proper ['prɒpə] правильный
 proud [praʊd] гордый
 to publish [pə'bɪʃ] печатать, опубликовывать
 punctuation [ˌpʌŋk'tʃu:ən] пунктуация
 purpose ['pʊrps] цель
 push [pʊʃ] толкать
 to push somebody away отталкивать кого-либо
 pyramid ['paɪrəmaɪd] пирамида

Q

- quality ['kwɒləti] качество
 quarterly ['kwɔ:tlɪ] ежеквартальный
 quietness ['kwɪəntɪs] тишина, спокойствие

- quite [kwaɪt] совсем, совершенно, вполне
 quiz [kɪz, kwɪzəz] [kwɪz] проверочная работа
 a quiz on history проверочная работа по истории
 a quiz show ['kwɪz,ʃəʊ] телевикторина

R

- rake [reɪk] грабли
 to reach [ri:tʃ] достигать
 reason ['ri:zn] причина
 reasonable ['ri:znəbl] разумный
 rebel [ri'bɛl] повстанец, мятежник, бунтарь
 to rebel [ri'bɛl] поднимать восстание, восставать
 to rebel against smth восставать против чего-либо
 rebellion [ri'beljən] восстание, мятеж, бунт
 a military rebellion военный мятеж
 teenage rebellion подростковый протест
 rebellious [ri'beljəs] бунтарский, мятежный, непокорный, непослушный
 to refuse [rɪ'fuz] отказываться(ся)
 relativity [ˌrelə'tɪvɪti] относительность
 reliable [rɪ'laɪəbl] надежный, достоверный
 to rely (on) [rɪ'laɪ] полагаться (на)
 to represent [ˌreprɪ'zent] представлять
 to require [rɪ'kwaɪə] требовать
 to be required of smth требоваться от кого-либо
 to rescue [ˈreskjʊə] спасать
 to respect [rɪ'spekt] 1) и уважение; 2) и уважать
 to show respect for smth оказывать уважение к кому-либо
 to have respect of smth пользоваться чьим-либо уважением
 respectable [ˌrɪspek'təbl] почтенный, представительный
 respectful [ˌrɪspek't(ə)l] почтительный
 respectfully [ˌrɪspek't(ə)lɪ] почтительно
 to speak respectfully of smth говорить о ком-то почтительно
 the rest [rest] остальные, остальные
 to retire [rɪ'taɪə] уходить на пенсию, а отставку
 retired [rɪ'taɪəd] ушедший на пенсию
 reversed [rɪ'vɜ:sd] перевернутый
 revise [rɪ'vaɪz] пересмотреть
 rewarding [rɪ'wɔ:dn] благодарный
 the rich [rɪʃ] богатые люди
 riddle ['rɪdl] загадка
 to solve a riddle отгадать загадку
 to talk in riddles говорить загадками

right [raɪt] право

equal rights for everybody равные права для всех

the right to education право на образование

the right to free speech право на свободу слова

rise [raɪz] повыситься

to give a rise to smth дать толчок чему-либо, послужить началом

to roll [rɒl] скатывать в трубочку

to rot [rɒt] гнить, разлагаться

rotating [rəʊˈteɪtɪŋ] вращающийся

rude [ruːd] грубый

rude of her... с ее стороны грубо...

rudeness [ruːdnəs] грубость

S

sailor ['seɪlə] матрос, моряк

salary ['sæləri] жалованье, оклад

satellite ['sætəlaɪt] спутник

satisfaction [ˌsætɪsˈfækʃən] удовлетворение

satisfactory [ˌsætɪsˈfektəri] удовлетворительный

satisfy ['sætɪsfaɪ] удовлетворять

saturnian [ˈsætʊrɪən] сатурниан

saw [sɔː] пила

scene [siːn] 1) место действия (в пьесе, романе и т. п.); 2) сцена (театр)

science ['saɪns] наука

science fiction [ˌsaɪnsˈfɪkʃən] научная фантастика

seat [siːt] место

a front-row seat место в первом ряду

to take a seat занять место

secret ['siːkrət] 1) *n* секрет; 2) *adj* секретный

secure [sɪˈkjʊə] безопасный

security [sɪˈkjʊəri] 1) безопасность; 2) охрана

to see [siː] видеть

to see to smth позаботиться о том, чтобы

seed drill ['siːdˌdrɪl] сеялка

seismograph ['saɪsməgrəf] сейсмограф

self-confidence [ˌselfˈkɒnfɪdəns] уверенность

to sell (sold, sold) [sel] продавать

to sell for some money продать за какие-то деньги

serial ['siəriəl] сериал, непрерывный фильм

series ['siəriːz] серия, цикл, ряд

serious ['siəriəs] серьезный

to be serious about smth быть серьезным по поводу чего-либо

dead serious абсолютно серьезный

serve [sɜːv] 1) служить; 2) обслуживать

to serve dinner подавать обед

service ['sɜːvɪs] служба

the service of a doctor услуга врача

mail (post) service почтовая служба

to shake (shook, shaken) [ʃeɪk] тряситься, дрожать

to be shaking all over дрожать с ног до головы

to shake hands пожать руки

to shake with laughter трясется от смеха

shame [ʃeɪm] стыд, позор, жалость

to bring shame on smth навлечь позор на что-либо

to be full of shame стыдиться от стыда

to feel (be) shame at smth не испытывать стыда по поводу, из-за чего-либо

to one's shame к чьей-то стыду

What a shame! Какая жалость!

without shame без стыда

to share [ʃeə] делиться

sharp [ʃɜːp] острый

at 5 sharp ровно (точно) в пять

shaver [ˈʃeɪvə] бритва

shift [ʃɪft] перемена смены

shopaholic [ˌʃɒpəˈhɒlɪk] человек, страдающий непреодолимой тягой к магазинам

sight [saɪt] вид, зрение

in sight [ɪnˈsaɪt] в поле зрения

signature ['sɪɡnətʃə] подпись

similar ['sɪmələ] похожий

skill [skɪl] умение, навык, мастерство

to have no skills in smth не иметь навыков в чем-либо

reading skills навыки чтения

writing skills навыки письма

skillful ['skɪlfʊl] умелый

soap opera ['səʊp,əpərə] телесериал

to socialise ['səʊʃəlaɪz] общаться

society [səˈsaɪəti] общество

a middle-class society средний класс

solar ['səʊlə] солнечный

sort of ['sɔːt] разл. «типа», «что-то вроде»

soal [soʊl] душа

space [speɪs] космическое пространство, космос

a spaceship космический корабль

a space shuttle космический корабль многоразового использования

stade [steɪd] стадия

- spear [spiə] копье
spell [spɛl] очарование, заклинание
to spoil [spɔɪl] испортить
to spread (sprɪd, spread) [sprɛd] 1) расправить; 2) распространяться
to spread over the country распространяться(ся) по стране
spread n [sprɛd] 1) скатерть, покрывало; 2) паста, пастообразный продукт, намазка
chicken spread салат (или консерв) с курицей
chicken spread куриный салат
spy [spi] 1) и шпион; 2) и шпионить
to spy for smb шпионить в пользу кого-либо
to spy on smb шпионить на ком-либо
stand (for) [stænd] обозначать
standard ['stændəd] 1) и стандарт; 2) adj стандартный
steam [sti:m] пар
a steam engine паровой двигатель
stem [stem] основа слова
to store [stɔ:] хранить
story ['stɔ:ri] история, рассказ, повесть
an adventure story приключенческая повесть
a horror story готическая повесть, повесть, полная ужасов
a love story рассказ, повесть о любви
a mystery story мистический рассказ, повесть
a science-fiction story научно-фантастический рассказ
a short story рассказ
a war story повесть о войне, военный рассказ
strange [streɪndʒ] странный
to succeed in smth [sək'si:d] преуспеть в чем-либо
to suit smth [su:t] подходить к чему-либо
sum [sʌm] 1) сумма; 2) задача
to do smth решить задачу
to sum up суммировать
to suppose [sə'səʊz] предполагать
He is supposed to go... Предполагается (полагается), что он должен идти...
to surf [sɜ:f] скакать по поверхности
to surf the channels переключать каналы телевидения
to surf the net «сидеть» в Интернете
survey ['sɜ:vi] опрос (общественного мнения), обзор

T

- table-cloth ['teɪbəl, klɒt] скатерть
talk show ['tɔ:k, ʃəʊ] ток-шоу (телевизионная передача)
tatters ['tætəz] лохмотья

- tax(es) [tæks(ɪz)] налог(и)
to tear (tɪə, tɔ:ə) [tiə] рвать
tease [ti:z] издевательство
sized ['saɪzd] усталый
to be tired of smth устать от чего-либо
though [ðəʊ] хотя
threat [θret] угроза
a threat of rain угроза дождя
a threat to freedom угроза свободе
to threaten [θretən] угрожать
threatening ['θretənɪŋ] угрожающий
through [θru:] сквозь, через
to be through with smth покончить с чем-то
toast [təʊst] тостер
tongs [tɒŋz] щипцы
too [tu:] слишком
tool [tu:l] инструмент
top [tɒp] верх, верхняя
to be at the top of the class быть лучшим учеником в классе
trade [treɪd] торговля
domestic trade торговля на внутреннем рынке
foreign trade внешняя торговля
tourist trade туристический бизнес
world trade международная торговля
trader ['treɪdɪ] торговец
train [treɪn] тренировать, обучать
trainer ['treɪnɪ] тренер
trash [træʃ] 1) мусор, хлам, мусор; 2) мусор, удар
treasure ['treʒə] сокровище
treasure-house ['treʒəʊs] сокровищница
to trust [trʌst] доверять
try [tri] 1) и пытаться, пробовать; 2) и попытка
to try on примерять
turn [tɜ:n] 1) и поворот, изгиб; 2) и поворачивать
at the turn of the century на рубеже веков
to turn down сделать тише
to turn into превратиться в
to turn off выключить
to turn on включить
to turn out оказаться
to turn over перевернуть(ся)
to turn up оказаться, неожиданно появиться
to type [taɪp] печатать
to type in/into a computer печатать на компьютере
to type on a typewriter печатать на пишущей машинке

U

in underline [ˌaɪnˈdaɪn] подчеркивать

underlined [ˌaɪnˈdaɪnd] подчеркнутый

unemployed [ˌʌnˈɪmˌplɔɪd] безработный

the unemployed [ˌʌnˈɪmˌplɔɪd] безработные люди

unforgettable [ˌʌnfəˈɡetəbəl] незабываемый

the universe [ˈjuːnɪˌvɜːs] вселенная

unreal [ˌʌnˈriəl] нереальный

unsocial [ˌʌnˈsoʊʃl] неспособный находить контакт с людьми

to use [juːz] использовать

use [juːz] использование

to be in use употребляться

there is no use doing sth бесполезно делать что-либо

free use of sth бесплатное использование чего-либо

used [juːd] использованный

used [juːt] to sth привыкший к чему-либо

to be used to doing sth привыкнуть делать что-то

used [juːt] to do sth иметь обыкновение делать что-то (я привык)

I used to take the bus. Я имел обыкновение ездить на автобусе.

V

vacuum cleaner [ˈvækjʊmˌkliːnə] пылесос

variety [ˈvɛəriəti] разнообразие

various [ˈvɛəriəs] различные, разнообразный

vet [vet] ветеринар

viola [ˈviəʊlə] альт (музыкальный инструмент)

violence [ˈvaɪələns] насилие, ярость

the violence of storm ярость бури

violent [ˈvaɪələnt] жестокий, жестокий

violin [ˈvaɪəlɪn] скрипка

voluntary [ˈvɒləntəri] добровольный

W

warning [ˈwɔːnɪŋ] предупреждение

washing machine [ˈwɒʃɪŋ məʃiːn] стиральная машина

to waste [weɪst] тратить, попусту

wasteful [ˈweɪstfʊl] расточительный

waterwheel [ˈwɔːtə,wɪl] водяное колесо

way [weɪ] 1) путь, дорога; 2) способ

the other way round наоборот

weapon [ˈweɪpən] оружие, оружие

atomic weapons атомное оружие

biological weapons биологическое оружие

weekly [ˈwiːkli] 1) adj/сводный; 2) n/сводники

wheat [wiːt] пшеница

whisper [ˈwɪspə] 1) n/шепот; 2) v/шептать

to say in a whisper прошептать шепотом

whiteness [ˈwaɪtnəs] белизна

whole [həʊl] целый

wholly [ˈhəʊli] в целом

wise [waɪz] мудрый

wisdom [ˈwɪzdəm] мудрость

within [wɪˈθɪn] внутри, в пределах

womanhood [ˈwʊmən,hʊd] принадлежность (к женщине)

worth [wɜːθ] стоить

to be worth doing sth стоить делать что-либо

to worry [ˈwʌri] беспокоиться

to wrap [ræp] завертывать

to wrap sth round oneself завернуться во что-то

Y

the young [jʊŋ] молодежь, молодые люди

youth [juːθ] 1) n/молодежь; 2) adj/молодежный

Z

zoologist [ˈzɒlədʒɪst] зоолог

Таблица неправильных глаголов

316

be [bi]	was/were [wɒz/wɛz]	been [bi:n]	быть
become [bi'kʌm]	became [bi'keɪm]	became [bi'kʌm]	становиться, делаться
begin [bi'ɡɪn]	began [bi'ɡen]	begun [bi'ɡʌn]	начинать
blow [bləʊ]	blew [blu:]	blown [blɔ:n]	дуть
break [breɪk]	broke [breɪk]	broken [breɪkən]	ломать
broadcast ['brɒdkæst]	broadcast ['brɒdkæst]	broadcast ['brɒdkæst]	транслировать
bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]	приносить, привозить
build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]	строить
burn [bɜ:n]	burnt [bɜ:n]	burnt [bɜ:n]	жечь, гореть
buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]	покупать
can [kən]	could [kʊd]		мочь
catch [kætʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]	схватывать, поймать
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃoʊ]	chosen [tʃɔ:n]	выбирать
come [kʌm]	came [keɪm]	come [kʌm]	приходить
cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	резать
do [du:]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]	делать
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]	рисовать
dream [dri:m]	dreamed/ dreamt [dri:m]	dreamed/ dreamt [dri:m]	сниться
drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	пить
drive [draɪv]	drove [drɒv]	driven ['drɪvən]	водить (автомобиль и т. п.)
eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten [i:tn]	есть
fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen [fɔ:lən]	падать
feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	felt [felt]	чувствовать
fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]	драаться, сражаться
find [faɪnd]	found [faʊnd]	found [faʊnd]	находить
fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	flown [flaʊn]	летать
forget [fɔ:'ɡet]	forgot [fɔ:'ɡet]	forgotten [fɔ:'ɡɒtn]	забывать

Продолжение табл.

get [ɡet]	got [ɡɒt]	got [ɡɒt]	получать
give [ɡɪv]	gave [ɡeɪv]	given [ɡɪvən]	давать
go [ɡəʊ]	went [went]	gone [ɡɒn]	идти, уходить
grow [ɡrəʊ]	grew [ɡru:]	grown [ɡrɔ:n]	расти
hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	висеть
have [hæv]	had [həd]	had [həd]	иметь
hear [hiə]	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]	слышать
hold [həʊld]	held [held]	held [held]	держат, содержать
hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	причинять боль
keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	держат, содержать
know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	known [nɔ:n]	знать
lay [leɪ]	laid [leɪd]	laid [leɪd]	положить, класть
learn [lɜ:n]	learned/learn [lɜ:n]	learned/learn [lɜ:n]	учить
leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]	решать, покидать, оставлять
lead [li:d]	led [led]	led [led]	вести
let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	позволять, давать
lie [laɪ]	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]	лежать
lose [lu:z]	lost [lɒst]	lost [lɒst]	терять
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]	делать, изготавливать
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	значить, иметь в виду
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	встречать
put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	класть
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	читать
ride [raɪd]	rode [rɒd]	ridden [rɪdn]	ехать (скакая на лошади, на велосипеде)
ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]	звонить
rise [raɪz]	rose [rəʊz]	risen [ˈri:zn]	подниматься
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]	бежать
say [seɪ]	said [saɪd]	said [saɪd]	сказать

see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]	видеть
sell [sel]	sold [sɒld]	sold [sɒld]	продавать
send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]	посылать
shake [ʃeɪk]	shook [ʃʊk]	shaken [ˈʃeɪkən]	трясти(ся), дрожать
ski [ski]	skied [ski:d]	skied [ski:d]	кататься на лыжах
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spəʊk]	spoken [ˈspəʊk(ɪ)n]	говорить
spell [spel]	spelt [spelt]	spelt [spelt]	произносить по буквам
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	тратить (день- ги); проводить (время)
spread [spred]	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	распространять; распространяться
stand [sta:nd]	stood [stʊd]	stood [stʊd]	стоять
strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]	ударять, бить (о поверхность)
swim [swɪm]	swam [swʌm]	swum [swʌm]	плавать
take [teɪk]	took [tu:k]	taken [ˈteɪk(ɪ)n]	брать
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	учить, обучать
tear [tiə]	tore [tɜ:]	torn [tɔ:n]	рвать
tell [tel]	told [tɒld]	told [tɒld]	сказывать, рассказывать
think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
understand [ʌndə'sta:nd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊnd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊnd]	понимать
wear [weə]	wore [wɜ:]	worn [wɔ:n]	носить, быть одетым
win [wɪn]	won [wɒn]	won [wɒn]	побеждать
write [raɪt]	wrote [rɔ:t]	written [ˈrɪtən]	писать

Список сокращений

Am E¹ — American English

b* — born

BC — Before Christ

Bln* — billion

Br E* — British English

CA — California

CD — compact disk

CIA — Central Intelligence Agency

(IDP)

DC — District of Columbia

DVD — an object like a CD that has
a film or television programme re-

corded on it

MP — members of Parliament

Mr* — mister

St* — street

TV — television

UK — United Kingdom

¹ Слова, отмеченные звездочкой, сокращаются только на письме, в речи
часто произносятся полностью.

Unit 1. Mass Media: Television	3
Unit 2. The Printed Page: Books, Magazines, Newspapers	63
Unit 3. Science and Technology	121
Unit 4. Teenagers: Their Life and Problems	182
Unit 5. Your Future Life and Career	239
Англо-русский словарь	295
Таблица неправильных глаголов	316
Список сокращений	319



ISBN 978-5-358-06646-5



9 785358 066465